LOGICAL INVESTIGATIONS ON SEPARATION LOGICS
(draft)

EUROPEAN SUMMER SCHOOL ON LOGIC, LANGUAGE AND INFORMATION
BARCELONA, SPAIN, AUGUST 2015

Stéphane Demri  Morgan Deters

Lecture Notes
September 8, 2015
Foreword

In June 2014, with my colleague and friend Morgan Deters, we have submitted an advanced course for ESSLLI’15 about logical investigations on separation logics by focusing on expressiveness, computational complexity of reasoning tasks and decision procedures, some of them based on SMT technology. The submission has been accepted in the fall 2014. In November 2014, while Morgan visited the Laboratoire Spécification and Vérification (ENS Cachan), we discussed further the content of the lectures as well as the plan of the lecture notes. The current document is the fruit of a joint and intense effort to present in a single volume fundamental results about separation logics and to provide numerous bibliographical references for further study. Morgan passed away unexpectedly last January and our project to produce the exact document we had in mind became impossible. Morgan and I wrote several articles about separation logics and we had many discussions about the logical side of separation logics while I have been visiting New York University in 2012–2014. The current document is the outcome of our fruitful collaboration\footnote{This work has been partially supported by the EU Seventh Framework Programme under grant agreement No. PIOF-GA-2011-301166 (DATAVERIF)}. It is partly inspired from the material in the papers \cite{DD14, DD15b, DD15a}. All the mistakes are mine.

To the memory of Morgan Deters.

Stéphane Demri
demri@lsv.fr
June 15th, 2015 — Cachan
# Contents

1. **First Steps in Separation Logics**
   - 1.1 Floyd-Hoare Logic and Separation Logic
     - 1.1.1 Hoare triples
     - 1.1.2 Weakest preconditions
     - 1.1.3 Adding pointers
     - 1.1.4 The birth of separation logic
   - 1.2 A Core Version of Separation Logic
     - 1.2.1 Basic definitions
     - 1.2.2 Expressing properties with separation logic
     - 1.2.3 Deduction rules in a Floyd-Hoare proof system
     - 1.2.4 Classes of formulae
     - 1.2.5 Decision problems
   - 1.3 Relationships with Other Logics
     - 1.3.1 Logic of bunched implications and its Boolean variant
     - 1.3.2 First-order logic with second-order features
     - 1.3.3 Translation into dyadic second-order logic
     - 1.3.4 Undecidability
     - 1.3.5 Modal logics with updates
   - 1.4 Exercises

2. **Propositional Separation Logics**
   - 2.1 PSPACE-Completeness and Expressive Power
     - 2.1.1 PSPACE-hard fragments of kSL0
     - 2.1.2 Boolean formulae for propositional separation logics
   - 2.2 NP and PTIME Fragments
   - 2.3 Undecidable Propositional Separation Logics
     - 2.3.1 A brief introduction to abstract separation logics
     - 2.3.2 Encoding runs of Minsky machines
CONTENTS

2.4 Exercises ................................................................. 62

3 EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS 65
3.1 Encoding Data Words in 1SL2 .............................. 66
3.2 Encoding Arithmetical Constraints in 1SL2 .............. 71
3.3 Undecidability of 1SL2 ............................................. 77
  3.3.1 Constraints between locations at distance three 77
  3.3.2 Reduction from the halting problem for Minsky machines 81
3.4 Expressive Completeness .......................................... 85
  3.4.1 Left and right parentheses .................................. 86
  3.4.2 The role of parentheses ...................................... 89
  3.4.3 Taking care of valuations ................................. 94
  3.4.4 A reduction from DSOL into 1SL2(−∗) .................. 100
3.5 Exercises ................................................................. 108
3.6 Bibliographical References on Expressiveness .......... 109

4 RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS 111
4.1 Data Logics .............................................................. 112
  4.1.1 Separation logic with data .................................. 112
  4.1.2 Undecidability for separation logic with data .......... 114
  4.1.3 A decidable fragment ......................................... 116
  4.1.4 First-order data logics ....................................... 116
4.2 Interval Temporal Logics ............................................. 119
  4.2.1 The logic PITL ................................................ 119
  4.2.2 A correspondence between words and heaps .......... 121
  4.2.3 A reduction and its three ways to chop ............... 123
4.3 Modal Logics ............................................................ 128
  4.3.1 A modal logic for heaps .................................... 128
  4.3.2 A refinement with the modal fragment of 1SL2(∗) .. 131
4.4 Monadic Second-Order Logic ...................................... 133
4.5 Exercises ................................................................. 136

5 DECISION PROCEDURES 137
5.1 Direct Versus Translation Approach ......................... 139
  5.1.1 Direct approach versus translation for deciding modal logics 139
  5.1.2 Translation versus specialised algorithms for separation logic 139
  5.1.3 The SMT framework ............................................ 140
INTRODUCTION

Introducing new logics is always an uncertain enterprise since there must be sufficient interest to use new formalisms. In spite of this hurdle, we know several recent success stories. For instance, even though a pioneering work on symbolic modal logic by Lewis appeared in 1918 [Lew18], the first monographs on symbolic modal logic appear about fifty years later, see e.g. [HC68]. Nowadays, modal logic is divided into many distinct branches and remains one of the most active research fields in logic and computer science, see e.g. [BvBW06]. Additionally, the introduction of temporal logic to computer science, due to Pnueli [Pnu77], has been a major step in the development of model-checking techniques, see e.g. [CGP00, BBF+01]. This is now a well-established approach for the formal verification of computer systems: one models the system to be verified by a mathematical structure (typically a directed graph) and expresses behavioral properties in a logical formalism (typically a temporal logic). Verification by model-checking [CGP00] consists of developing algorithms whose goal is to verify whether the logical properties are satisfied by the abstract model. The development of description logics for knowledge representation has also followed a successful path, thanks to a permanent interaction between theoretical works, pushing even further the high complexity and undecidability borders, and more applied works dedicated to the design of new tools and the production of more and more applications, especially in the realm of ontology languages. The wealth of research on description logic is best illustrated by [BCM+03], in which can be found many chapters on theory, implementations, and applications.

It is well-known that modal logic, temporal logic, and description logic have many similarities even though each family has its own research agenda. For instance, models can be (finite or infinite) graphs, the classes of models range from concrete ones to more abstract ones, and any above-mentioned class includes a wide range of logics and fragments. In the present lecture notes, we deal with another class of logics, separation logic, that has been introduced quite recently
and is the subject of tremendous interest, leading to many works on theory, tools and applications (mainly for the automatic program analysis). Any resemblance to modal, temporal, or description logic is certainly not purely coincidental—but separation logic also has its own assets.

In the possible-world semantics for modal logic, the connective □ [resp. ◻] corresponds to universal [resp. existential] quantification on successor worlds, and these are essential properties to be stated, partly explaining the impact of Kripke’s discovery [Kri59, Cop02]. Similarly, the ability to divide a model in two disjoint parts happens to be a very natural property and this might explain the success of separation logic in which disjoint memory states can be considered, providing an elegant means to perform local reasoning. Separation is a key concept that has been already introduced in interval temporal logic ITL [Mos83] with the “chop” connective, and in many other logical formalisms such as in graph logics [Loz04a, DGG07] or in extensions of PDL (see e.g. [BdFV11, BT14a]). Moreover, dependence logic has also a built-in notion of separation, see e.g. [AV11, KMSV14, HLSV14]. Therefore, the development of separation logic can be partly explained by the relevance of the separation concept. Its impressive development can be also justified by the fact that separation logic extends Hoare logic for reasoning about programs with dynamic data structures, meeting also industrial needs as witnessed by the recent acquisition of Monoidics Ltd by Facebook (see e.g. [CDD+15]).

Separation logic has been introduced as an extension of Hoare-Floyd logic (see e.g. [Hoa69, Apt81]) to verify programs with mutable data structures [IO01, Rey02]. A major feature is to be able to reason locally in a modular way, which can be performed thanks to the separating conjunction • that allows one to state properties in disjoint parts of the memory. Moreover, the adjunct implication • asserts that whenever a fresh heap satisfies a property, its composition with the current heap satisfies another property. This is particularly useful when a piece of code mutates memory locally, and we want to state some property of the entire memory (such as the preservation of data structure invariants). In a sense, if modal logic is made for reasoning about necessity and possibility, separation logic is made for reasoning about separation and composition. As a taste of separation logic, it is worth observing that models can be finite graphs and the classes of models range from concrete ones (with heaps for instance) to very abstract ones.

Smallfoot was the first implementation to use separation logic, its goal to verify the extent to which proofs and specifications made by hand could be treated automatically [BCO05]. The automatic part is related to the assertion checking, but the user has to provide preconditions, postconditions, and loop invariants. A
major step has been then to show that the method is indeed scalable [YLB+08].
In a sense, the legitimate question about the practical utility of separation logic
was quickly answered, leading to a new generation of tools such as Slayer developed
by Microsoft Research, Space Invader [DOY06, YLB+08], and Infer [CD11]
(still under development at Facebook [CDD+15, Section 4]). Actually, nowadays,
many tools support separation logic as an assertion language (see e.g. [MIG14])
and, more importantly, in order to produce interactive proofs with separation logic,
several proof assistants encode the logic, see e.g. [Tue11]. Furthermore, there ex-
ists also many tools that are dedicated to program verification and closely related
to tools explicitly using separation logic, see e.g. a description of the research
prototype VeriFast in [VJP15] (typically featherweight VeriFast and Smallfoot
share a very similar programming language). Note also that the development of
the different tools has been performed progressively; Whereas Smallfoot uses an
assertion language for preconditions, postconditions and loop invariants, Small-
footRG [VP07] goes beyond by inferring some loop invariants (which is apart
from the introduction of rules for dealing the the magic wand operator). Space In-
vader [DOY06] extends further the ideas of Smallfoot by determining annotations
for unannotated programs.

From the very beginning, the theory of separation logic has been an important
research thread even if not always related to automatic verification. This is not
very surprising since separation logic can be understood as a concretisation of
the logic BI of bunched implications which is a general logic of resource with a
nice proof theory [OP99]. More precisely, the logic BI exists in different flavours:
its intuitionistic version has additive and multiplicative connectives that behave
intuitionistically whereas its Boolean version admits Boolean additive connectives
with intuitionistic multiplicative connectives (+ and −∗), see more details in [LG13].
So, separation logic is rather a concretisation of Boolean BI (see more details in
Section 1.3.1).

Besides, as for modal and temporal logics, the relationships between sepa-
ration logic, and first-order or second-order logics have been the source of many
characterisations and works. This is particularly true since the separating connect-
ives are second-order in nature, see e.g. [Loz04a, KR04, CGH05, BDL12]. For
instance, separation logic is equivalent to a Boolean propositional logic [Loz04b,
Loz04a] if first-order quantifiers are disabled. Similarly, the complexity of satis-
fiability and model-checking problems for separation logic fragments have been
quite studied [COY01, Rey02, CHO*T11, AGH+14, BFGN14]. In [COY01], the
model-checking and satisfiability problems for propositional separation logic are
shown PSPACE-complete; this is done by proving a small model property.
In this course, we would like to emphasise the similarities between separation logic and, modal and temporal logics. Our intention is to pinpoint the common features in terms of models, proof techniques, motivations, decision procedures. Second, we wish to present landmark results about decidability, complexity and expressive power. These are standard themes for studying logics in computer science and we deliberately focus on the logical side of separation logic. Even though our intention is to produce a self-contained document as far as the definitions and results are concerned, we invite the reader to consult surveys on formal verification and separation logic, see e.g., the primer on separation logic in [O’H12], the lecture notes about Hoare logic and separation logic in [Gor14] or [Jen13a, Chapter 7] and [Jen13b]. See also [VJP15] for a detailed description of the tool featherweight VeriFast.

The five lectures are organised as follows and each chapter is dedicated to one lecture.

Lecture 1: First steps in separation logics.
Lecture 2: Propositional separation logics.
Lecture 3: Expressiveness of first-order separation logics.
Lecture 4: Relationships with other logics.
Lecture 5: Decision procedures.

Because of time and space limitations, we had to focus on core separation logic and for the presentation of the main results we adopt a puristic point of view. Namely, most of the logics

• are without data values (by contrast, see e.g. [BDES09, BBL09, MPQ11]),
• use concrete models (by contrast to abstract models considered in [COY07, BK10, LWG10, BV14]),
• are not multi-dimensional extensions of non-classical logics (by contrast, see e.g. [YRSW03, BDL09, CG13]),
• do not provide general inductive predicates (lists, trees, etc.) (by contrast, see e.g. [IRS13, BFGN14]).

However, these extensions shall be introduced and briefly discussed but we shall refer to original articles or surveys for in-depth developments.
Chapter 1

FIRST STEPS IN SEPARATION LOGICS

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Floyd-Hoare Logic and Separation Logic</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1</td>
<td>Hoare triples</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2</td>
<td>Weakest preconditions</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3</td>
<td>Adding pointers</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4</td>
<td>The birth of separation logic</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>A Core Version of Separation Logic</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1</td>
<td>Basic definitions</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2</td>
<td>Expressing properties with separation logic</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.3</td>
<td>Deduction rules in a Floyd-Hoare proof system</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4</td>
<td>Classes of formulae</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5</td>
<td>Decision problems</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Relationships with Other Logics</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1</td>
<td>Logic of bunched implications and its Boolean variant</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2</td>
<td>First-order logic with second-order features</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3</td>
<td>Translation into dyadic second-order logic</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4</td>
<td>Undecidability</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.5</td>
<td>Modal logics with updates</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13
In this chapter, we provide a brief introduction to separation logic by showing how it is related to formal verification. Later sections give a precise definition and focus on the logical language rather than on the verification process. This means that we adopt a restrictive use of the term ‘separation logic’ which is understood as an assertion logic, rather than an understanding combining in some way the assertion logic, the programming language and/or the specification logic. Section 1.1.1 is dedicated to Floyd-Hoare logic understood as a proof system made of deduction rules to verify the correctness of programs. Section 1.1.4 recalls how separation logic appears as a way to repair the defects of Floyd-Hoare logic when pointers are involved. Relationships with the logic of bunched implications logic BI are also briefly explained. In Section 1.2.1 we present the syntax and semantics for the versions of separation logics considered in this document. Section 1.2.2 explains how to express properties with formulae from separation logics whereas Section 1.2.4 provides a classification of formulae involving pure, intuitionistic and strictly exact formulae, respectively. Section 1.2.3 presents a few rules in a Floyd-Hoare-like proof system when commands for mutable shared data structures are involved and when the assertion language uses formulae from separation logic. Section 1.2.5 presents some more decision problems for separation logics. Section 1.3 provides first insights about the relationships between separation logics and other non-classical logics. This shall be complemented by material in the subsequent chapters, as it is done, for instance, in Chapter 4.

Highlights of the chapter

1. Definition of separation logics following [IO01, Rey02] in which the set of addresses/values is equal to \( \mathbb{N} \).

2. Translation of \( kSL \) into weak monadic second-order logic by internalising the semantics.

3. Undecidability proof of \( 2SL \) (without separating connectives) by reduction from the finitary satisfiability problem for predicate logic restricted to a unique binary predicate symbol (Theorem 1.3.4) [COY01].
1.1 Floyd-Hoare Logic and Separation Logic

1.1.1 Hoare triples

Hoare logic, proposed in 1969 by Tony Hoare [Hoa69] and inspired by the earlier work of Floyd [Flo67], is a formal system used to show the correctness of programs (see a quite complete survey in [Apt81], the recent lecture notes [Gor14] or the extension to parallel programming languages in [OG76]). This is an axiomatic method that had a substantial impact for the design and the verification of computer programs. Its hallmark, the Hoare triple, is composed of assertions \( \varphi \) and \( \psi \) and the command \( C \):

\[
\{ \varphi \} \ C \ {\psi}.
\]

Simply put, such a triple means that given a program state where the precondi-
tion \( \varphi \) holds, the execution of \( C \) yields a state in which the postcondition \( \psi \) holds.

Two commands can be composed:

\[
\frac{\{ \varphi \} \ C_1 \ {\psi} \quad \{\psi\} \ C_2 \ {\chi}}{\{ \varphi \} \ C_1 ; C_2 \ {\chi}} \text{ composition}
\]

Similarly, the \texttt{skip} has no effect.

\[
\{ \varphi \} \ \texttt{skip} \ {\varphi}.
\]

Preconditions can be strengthened and postconditions can be weakened in a natu-
ral fashion:

\[
\frac{\varphi \Rightarrow \varphi'}{\{ \varphi \} \ C \ {\psi} \Rightarrow \{ \varphi' \} \ C \ {\psi'}} \text{ strengthen/weaken}
\]

The expression \( \varphi \Rightarrow \varphi' \) can be read as \( \varphi \) entails \( \varphi' \), which amounts to state the logical validity of the formula \( \varphi \Rightarrow \varphi' \), when defined in a first-order dialect. An assignment axiom schema is stated simply:

\[
\frac{}{\{ \varphi[e/x] \} \ x := e \ {\varphi}} \text{ assignment}
\]

In general, atomic commands, such as the assignment, are axiomatised by so-
called \textit{small axioms}.

Example 1.1.1. Here are examples of “valid” triples that are related to assign-
ment but that are not instances of the assignment axiom schema.
1.1. FLOYD-HOARE LOGIC AND SEPARATION LOGIC

- \{x = 1\} \ x := x + 2 \ {x \geq 2}.
- \{x = 1\} \ x := x + 2 \ {x = 3}.
- \{x = 1\} \ x := x + 2 \ {\exists y, z \ (y \cdot z > 0 \land x = y \cdot z - 1)}.

By contrast, the triple below is an instance:

\{x + 2 = 3\} \ x := x + 2 \ {x = 3}.

Here is another deduction rule (that remain sounds even when the new commands introduced below are considered):

\[
\frac{\{\varphi\} \ C \ \{\psi\}}{\exists u \ \varphi \ C \ \exists u \ \psi}
\]

auxiliary variable elimination

assuming that \(u\) is not free in \(C\).

Additional deduction rules for the command \texttt{while} and \texttt{if-then-else} in Floyd-Hoare logic proof system can be defined as follows:

\[
\frac{\{\varphi \land B\} \ C \ \{\varphi\}}{\varphi \ \texttt{while} \ B \ \texttt{do} \ C \ \{\varphi \land \neg B\}} \quad \text{while rule}
\]

\[
\frac{\{\varphi \land B\} \ C_1 \ \{\psi\} \ \{\varphi \land \neg B\} \ C_2 \ \{\psi\}}{\{\varphi\} \ \texttt{if} \ B \ \texttt{then} \ C_1 \ \texttt{else} \ C_2 \ \{\psi\}} \quad \text{conditional rule}
\]

Note that \(B\) is a Boolean expression in the programming language but it also belongs to the assertion language for preconditions and postconditions since the deduction rules handles formulae of the form \(\varphi \land B\) and \(\varphi \land \neg B\).

The \textbf{rule of constancy} can be also defined as follows:

\[
\frac{\{\varphi\} \ C \ \{\psi\}}{\{\varphi \land \psi'\} \ C \ \{\psi \land \psi'\}}
\]

where no variable free in \(\psi'\) is modified by \(C\).

An instance of the rule of constancy can be found below:

\[
\frac{\{x = 3\} \ x := 4; z := x \ \{x = 4\}}{\{x = 3 \land y = 8\} \ x := 4; z := x \ \{x = 4 \land y := 8\}}
\]

Note that \(y\) does not occur in \(x := 4; z := x\).
CHAPTER 1. FIRST STEPS IN SEPARATION LOGICS

Given a formal semantics for a simple imperative programming language based on the above command, it is possible to state soundness and completeness properties (see e.g. [Apt81]). We do not provide here a formal semantics in terms of small-step operational semantics for the commands but it can be defined via a binary relation $s, C \rightsquigarrow s', C'$ that corresponds to one step in the computation. The expressions $s$ and $s'$ are assignments for the program variables and executing one step of $C$ leads to $s'$ and it remains to compute $C$. Termination is expressed by $s, C \rightsquigarrow^* s', \text{skip}$ where $\rightsquigarrow^*$ denote the reflexive and transitive closure. With this approach, the following simple observations can be made:

1. any command except \texttt{skip} can execute in any state (possibly except \texttt{halt}),
2. \texttt{skip} alone represents the final step of execution of a program,
3. there is no possible runtime error.

Consequently, $C$ does not terminate means that $C$ diverges. When pointers are involved, failed dereference operations are possible and therefore nontermination of a command does not imply necessarily divergence.

Correctness of the proof system involving Hoare triples means that whenever a triple $\{\varphi\} C \{\psi\}$ is derived, it is valid. This means that if $s, C \rightsquigarrow^* s', \text{skip}$ and $s \models \varphi$ (the formula from the assertion language is satisfied by the current variable assignment), then $s' \models \psi$. This type of correctness is called \textit{partial}. By contrast, \textit{total correctness} requires that if $s \models \varphi$, then $s, C \rightsquigarrow^* s', \text{skip}$ (termination) and $s' \models \psi$. Besides, \textit{relative completeness} requires that every valid triple is derivable in the proof system. Of course, all these notions are relative to a programming language, to its semantics, to the assertion language for the pre/post-conditions and to the exact rules of the proof system.

1.1.2 Weakest preconditions

Relative completeness for Hoare logic has been established in [Coo78] by using \textit{weakest preconditions} introduced by E.W. Dijkstra, see e.g. [Dij76]. A weakest precondition $wp(C, \psi)$ is a predicate that describes the exact set of states $s$ such that when $C$ is started in $s$, if it terminates, then it terminates in a state satisfying $\psi$. In a sense, $wp(C, \psi)$ corresponds to the minimal precondition $\varphi$ that validates $\{\varphi\} C \{\psi\}$. So, Hoare logic is complete if the assertion logic $\mathcal{L}$ can express the weakest preconditions for any $C$ and $\psi$. The proof for relative completeness from [Coo78] uses weakest preconditions and a structural induction on $C$. 
1.1. FLOYD-HOARE LOGIC AND SEPARATION LOGIC

Note that checking validity of \( \{ \varphi \} C \{ \psi \} \) amounts to perform the following tasks:

1. to compute \( \wp(C, \psi) \),
2. to check the validity of \( \varphi \Rightarrow \wp(C, \psi) \).

Of course, this implies that \( \{ \wp(C, \psi) \} C \{ \psi \} \) is valid, which is expected in view of the specification for defining weakest preconditions. So, the completeness result for mono-procedure sequential programs proved in [Coo78] establishes that each triple \( \{ \wp(C, \psi) \} C \{ \psi \} \) is derivable.

By way of example, we briefly explain how weakest preconditions can be defined inductively. Note that this assumes that the assertion logic has sufficient syntactic resources and that it contains appropriate logical connectives and quantifiers.

\[
\begin{align*}
\wp(\text{skip}, \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \psi \\
\wp(x := e, \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \psi[e/x] \\
\wp(C_1; C_2, \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \wp(C_1, \wp(C_2, \psi)) \\
\wp(\text{if } B \text{ then } C_1 \text{ else } C_2, \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} (B = T \land \wp(C_1, \psi)) \land (B = F \land \wp(C_2, \psi)) \\
\wp(\text{while } B \text{ do } C, \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} I \land \forall y_1, \ldots, y_k \ ((B = T \land I) \Rightarrow \wp(C, I)) \land ((B = F \land I) \Rightarrow \psi)[y_i/x_i]
\end{align*}
\]

\((x_1, \ldots, x_k)\) are the assigned variables in \( C \)

Here, it is worth noting the necessity to annotate the program so that the invariant condition \( I \) is known before computing the weakest precondition, which is indeed problematic for a fully automated verification process.

1.1.3 Adding pointers

When pointers are added to the programming language (see an example below), soundness of the rule of constancy is not preserved, as briefly shown below. By way of example, we provide new commands for the manipulation of mutable shared data structures understood as an extension of an imperative programming language.

\[
\begin{align*}
x & := \text{cons}(e) \quad \text{allocation} \\
x & := [e] \quad \text{lookup} \\
[e] & := e' \quad \text{mutation} \\
\text{dispose}(e) & \quad \text{deallocation}
\end{align*}
\]
Again, we do not provide here a formal semantics in terms of small-step operational semantics for such commands but it is worth mentioning that computational states are extended so that a store is a variable assignment and a heap is understood as a map from the set of addresses into the set of values. A command of the form \( x := [e] \) updates the store whereas a command of the form \([e] := e'\) updates the heap. Moreover, the domain of the heap is augmented after the execution of the command \( x := \text{cons}(e) \) and it is reduced after the execution of the command \( \text{dispose}(e) \). In order to simplify technical developments, in the sequel, we assume that the set of addresses and the set of values are equal to the set of natural numbers. For instance,

\[
(s, h), x := \text{cons}(e) \leadsto (s[x \mapsto n], h \cup \{n \mapsto [e]\}), \text{skip}
\]

where \( n \mapsto [e] \) is a new memory cell and \([e]\) denotes the interpretation of the expression \( e \) (parameterised by \((s, h))\). This can be generalised to the command \( x := \text{cons}(e_1, \ldots, e_s) \) whose effect is to create \( s \) new memory cells with consecutive addresses. Similarly, we have

\[
(s, h), \text{dispose}(y) \leadsto (s, h \setminus \{\{y\mapsto m}\}), \text{skip}
\]

where \([y]\) belongs to the domain of \( h \), \( h([y]) = m \), and \( h \setminus \{\{y\mapsto m}\} \) is equal to \( h \), except that the memory cell \([y] \mapsto m\) is removed.

As noted quite early, original Floyd-Hoare logic has a severe limitation when pointers are involved. Consider the following triple, an instance of the assignment rule:

\[
\{y = 1\} x := 2 \{y = 1\}
\]

This essentially states that an assignment of 2 to \( x \) does not affect the value of \( y \) (if it is 1). With many popular imperative programming languages, this is not the case, as \( x \) and \( y \) may in fact be aliased, i.e., they may refer to the same or a partially-overlapping region of computer memory.

More precisely, the presence of pointers invalidates the use of the rule of constancy. Indeed, consider the following instance of the rule when pointers are involved:

\[
\{\exists u (x \leftrightarrow u)\} x := 4 \{x \leftrightarrow 4\}
\]

\[
((\exists u (x \leftrightarrow u)) \land y \leftrightarrow 3) [x] := 4 \{x \leftrightarrow 4 \land y \leftrightarrow 3\}
\]

where \( x \leftrightarrow u \) is a logical atomic formula stating that the heap has a memory cell with address \( x \) and value \( u \). Unsoundness is due to the possibility that \( x \) is equal to \( y \) (aliasing).
This defect will be repaired with the introduction of the **frame rule** below where $*$ is a separating connective so that distinct parts of memory can be reasoned about distinctly.

\[
\begin{align*}
\{\phi\} C \{\psi\} \\
\{\phi \ast \psi'\} C \{\psi \ast \psi'\}
\end{align*}
\]

frame rule

where no variable free in $\psi'$ is modified by $C$.

Naturally, the problem with pointers was understood early on as a limitation, and aliasing has continued to plague program analysis in the decades since. However, the simplicity and composability of Hoare’s proposal was appreciated, and various ways of overcoming this limitation within Hoare’s formalism have been sought. Many of these approaches have used some form of separation, by which distinct parts of memory can be reasoned about distinctly.

### 1.1.4 The birth of separation logic

Burstall introduced distinct nonrepeating tree systems in 1972 [Bur72], implicitly appealing to a notion of separation to be later enshrined in separation logic. There were, however, limitations of Burstall’s approach (see [Rey00] for a full treatment). Fragments of data structures could be asserted as separate, and this invention was important; however, they were not permitted to have internal sharing. This has the effect that the assertion language is limited in its ability to distinguish structures with (unbounded) sharing. Further, the notion of composition was directional, so that mutually-referential data posed a problem.

Recognising these limitations, Reynolds introduced the notion of an “independent conjunction” to Hoare logic, capable of speaking of disjoint structures and thus maintaining some control in the face of the aliasing problem. Its first incarnation, interpreted classically, was flawed, as it assumed monotonicity of interpretations of assertions in extensions of memory states but included an unsound proof rule. This was quickly repaired by coopting an intuitionistic semantics [Rey00].

This intuitionistic version was discovered independently [IO01] by Ishtiaq and O’Hearn. In fact, their efforts (together with Pym) on bunched implication (BI) logics [OP99, Pym02] gave them a somewhat more general perspective, and they recognised Reynolds’ assertion language as being an instance of bunched implication that reasons about pointers. Independently, working from Reynolds’ earlier classical variant, they developed a version of BI that used Reynolds’ independent conjunction, and gave it intuitionistic semantics. Afterward, they considered a classical version, but ended up presenting these in reverse, the intuitionistic as a
variant of the classical; this as a result of the fact that the intuitionistic can be translated into the classical version, and the classical version was useful in reasoning about pointer disposal.

Their paper made two further important contributions. First, they introduced separating implication (the “magic wand”) to the logic (this quite naturally came from BI’s multiplicative implication). This addition of the magic wand was not merely an afterthought or side effect of the instantiation of bunched implication in this “pointer logic” setting; indeed its addition was justified in its own right when first introduced [IO01]. Despite this, many verification applications have made use of the separating conjunction only and do not employ the magic wand. However, nowadays its use in verification is more recognised; see [LP14, Section 1] and [HCGT14, Section 8] for recent discussions on this topic (see also [TBR14, SS15]).

Second, they introduced the frame rule, important for local reasoning [IO01] (see Section 1.1.1). Given a Hoare triple \( \{\varphi\} C \{\psi\} \) and reasoning about partial computer memories satisfying \( \varphi \) and \( \psi \), one can make conclusions about (disjoint) extensions of those partial memories and, in particular, about how these extensions are unaltered by \( C \). This is at the core of the scalability of separation logic and its ability to handle aliasing.

In all these early versions of separation logic, memory locations were distinct from the integers. Reynolds later offered an extension that takes memory locations to be a (countably infinite) subset of the integers, and made fields of larger units independently addressable. His goal was to adequately model the low-level operation of code and, particularly, address arithmetic. In this document, we adopt such a convention: memory locations are integers. We also adopt modern syntax; before 2002, Reynolds used ‘&’ for separating conjunction. The modern syntax is ‘∗’ for separating conjunction and ‘→’ for the separating implication, both taken from bunched implication logic.

### 1.2 A Core Version of Separation Logic

#### 1.2.1 Basic definitions

Let us start by defining separation logics on concrete models, namely on heaps. Let \( \text{PVAR} = \{x_1, x_2, \ldots\} \) be a countably infinite set of program variables and \( \text{FVAR} = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots\} \) be a countably infinite set of quantified variables. A memory state is a pair \((s, h)\) such that

Demri, Deters: Logical Investigations on Separation Logics (Draft) – September 8, 2015– ESSLLI’15
1.2. A CORE VERSION OF SEPARATION LOGIC

- \(s\) is a variable valuation of the form \(s : \text{PVAR} \to \mathbb{N}\) (the store).

- A **heap with \(k \geq 1\) record fields** is a partial function \(h : \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N}^k\) with finite domain. We write \(\text{dom}(h)\) to denote its domain and \(\text{ran}(h)\) to denote its range.

Usually in models for separation logic(s), memory states have a heap and a store for interpreting program variables, see e.g. [Rey02]. Herein, sometimes, there is no need for program variables (with a store) because we establish hardness results without the help of such program variables. Moreover, for the sake of simplicity, we do not make a distinction between the set of locations (domain of \(h\)) and the set of values (set of elements from the range of \(h\)).

When \(k = 1\), we write \(\|l\|\) to denote the cardinal of the set \(\{l' : h(l') = l\}\) made of **predecessors** of \(l\) (heap \(h\) is implicit in the expression \(\|l\|\)). A location \(l\) is an **ancestor** of a location \(l'\) iff there exists \(i \geq 0\) such that \(h^i(l) = l'\) where \(h^i(l)\) is shorthand for \(h(h(...(h(l)...)))\) (\(i\) applications of \(h\) to \(l\)).

Two heaps \(h_1\) and \(h_2\) are said to be **disjoint**, noted \(h_1 \perp h_2\), if their domains are disjoint; when this holds, we write \(h_1 \lor h_2\) to denote the heap corresponding to the disjoint union of the graphs of \(h_1\) and \(h_2\), hence \(\text{dom}(h_1 \lor h_2) = \text{dom}(h_1) \lor \text{dom}(h_2)\). When the domains of \(h_1\) and \(h_2\) are not disjoint, the composition \(h_1 \lor h_2\) is not defined even if \(h_1\) and \(h_2\) have the same values on \(\text{dom}(h_1) \cap \text{dom}(h_2)\). Moreover, we can also define the disjoint union of the memory states \((s_1, h_1)\) and \((s_2, h_2)\) when \(s_1 = s_2\) and \(h_1 \perp h_2\) so that \((s_1, h_1) \lor (s_2, h_2) \overset{def}{=} (s_1, h_1 \lor h_2)\). We write \(h \subseteq h'\) when the heap \(h'\) is a **conservative extension** of the heap \(h\), i.e. \(\text{dom}(h) \subseteq \text{dom}(h')\) and, \(h\) and \(h'\) agree on \(\text{dom}(h)\). In Figure 1.1 we illustrate how disjoint memory states are built when there is a unique record field while recalling a standard graphical representation. Each node represents a distinct natural number (the value is not specified in Figure 1.1) and each edge \(l \to l'\) encodes the fact that \(h(l) = l'\), assuming that \(h\) is the heap graphically represented. A variable \(x_i\) just above a node means that its value by the store \(s\) is precisely that node. In Figure 1.1, the heap on the left of the equality sign (say \(h\)) is equal to the disjoint union of the two heaps on the right of the equality sign (say \(h_1, h_2\) from left to right). For example, the self-loop on the node labelled by \(x_3\) encodes that \((s, h) \models x_3 \leftrightarrow x_3\) where \(\models\) is the satisfaction relation defined below. Similarly, \((s, h_1) \not\models x_3 \leftrightarrow x_3\) but not \((s, h_2) \not\models x_3 \leftrightarrow x_3\). Each edge in the graphical representation of the heap \(h\) corresponds to a unique edge in the graphical representation of either \(h_1\) or \(h_2\).

For every \(k \geq 1\), formulae of \(k\text{SL}\) are built from **expressions** of the form \(e ::= x | u\) where \(x \in \text{PVAR}\) and \(u \in \text{FVAR}\), and **atomic formulae** of the form

\[
\pi ::= e \overset{\tau}{\leftrightarrow} e' | e \overset{\tau}{\leftrightarrow} e_1, \ldots, e_k | \text{emp} | \bot.
\]
CHAPTER 1. FIRST STEPS IN SEPARATION LOGICS

Figure 1.1: Disjoint memory states with one record field.

Formulae are defined by the grammar

$$\phi, \psi ::= \pi \mid \phi \land \psi \mid \neg \phi \mid \phi \ast \psi \mid \phi \rightarrow \psi \mid \exists u \phi$$

where $u \in \text{FVAR}$. The connective $\ast$ is separating conjunction and $\rightarrow$ is separating implication, usually called the magic wand. The use of the magic wand $\rightarrow$ is due to [IO01]. We also make use of standard notations for derived connectives for this and all logics defined in this document.

As in classical first-order logic, an assignment is a map $f : \text{FVAR} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$. The satisfaction relation $\models$ is parameterised by assignments (obvious clauses for Boolean connectives are omitted):

- $(s, h) \models_{\text{emp}}$ iff $\text{dom}(h) = \emptyset$
- $(s, h) \models e = e'$ iff $[e] = [e']$, with $[x] \overset{\text{def}}{=} s(x)$ and $[u] \overset{\text{def}}{=} f(u)$
- $(s, h) \models e \leftrightarrow e_1, \ldots, e_k$ iff $[e] \in \text{dom}(h)$ and $h([e]) = ([e_1], \ldots, [e_k])$
- $(s, h) \models \phi_1 \ast \phi_2$ iff $h = h_1 \uplus h_2$, $(s, h_1) \models \phi_1$, $(s, h_2) \models \phi_2$
  for some $h_1, h_2$
- $(s, h) \models \phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2$ iff for all $h'$, if $h \perp h'$ and $(s, h') \models \phi_1$
  then $(s, h \uplus h') \models \phi_2$
- $(s, h) \models \exists u \phi$ iff there is $l \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $(s, h) \models_{[u \mapsto l]} \phi$ where $[u \mapsto l]$ is the assignment equal to $f$ except that $u$ takes the value $l$

When $\phi$ has no program variables, we also write $h \models \phi$ to mean that $\phi$ is satisfied on the heap $h$ under the assignment $f$. Furthermore, when $\phi$ is a sentence,
1.2. A CORE VERSION OF SEPARATION LOGIC

we can omit the subscript ‘f’ since $\phi$ has no free quantified variable. Note also that it is possible to get rid of program variables by viewing them as free quantified variables with rigid interpretation. However, it is sometime useful to distinguish syntactically program variables from quantified variables.

It is worth noting that separating conjunction $\ast$ has an existential flavour whereas separating implication $\rightarrow$ has a universal flavour. Nonetheless, $\rightarrow$ universally quantifies over an infinite set, namely the set of disjoint heaps. In the literature, an alternative syntax is used where $e \hookrightarrow e_1, \ldots, e_k$ is represented by the conjunction below:

$$e \hookrightarrow e_1 \land \cdots \land e \hookrightarrow e_k$$

When pointer arithmetic is allowed, $e \hookrightarrow e_1, \ldots, e_k$ can be also understood as the conjunction below

$$(e \hookrightarrow e_1) \land (e + 1 \hookrightarrow e_2) \land \cdots (e + (k - 1) \hookrightarrow e_k),$$

which requires some semantical adjustment. Nevertheless, in this document, we stick to $e \hookrightarrow e_1, \ldots, e_k$, as defined above.

The definition of $kSL$ does not provide a special treatment for nil. Indeed, it is possible to regain the usual behaviour by requiring that the interpretation of nil is not in the heap domain. This can be done in different ways depending on the fragment at hand.

The exact/precise points-to atomic formulae $x \mapsto y$ can be defined as abbreviations for $(x \hookrightarrow y) \land \neg(-\text{emp} \ast \neg\text{emp})$ and states that the domain of the heap is a singleton and the heap contains only the memory cell from $x \mapsto y$. The formula $\text{emp} \ast \neg\text{emp}$ enforces that $\text{card(dom(h))} \geq 2$. It is common to consider $x \mapsto y$ as a primitive atomic formula and in the rest of the document, we shall often refer to such an atomic formula. It will be clear from the context, whether $x \mapsto y$ should be considered as primitive.

For $k' \geq 0$, we write $kSLk'$ to denote the fragment of $kSL$ with at most $k'$ quantified variables. So, we write $kSL1$ to denote the fragment of $kSL$ restricted to a single quantified variable, say $u$. Moreover, $kSLk'(-\ast)$ [resp. $kSLk'(\ast)$] denotes the fragment of $kSLk'$ without separating conjunction [resp. without separating implication]. Note also that $kSL$ can be understood as a syntactic fragment of $(k + 1)SL$ by simply encoding $e \hookrightarrow e_1, \ldots, e_k$ by $e \hookrightarrow e_1, e_1, \ldots, e_k$ everywhere (the first expression is repeated twice).

As noted earlier, we do not make a distinction between the (countably infinite) set of locations and the set of values that includes the locations since only the set $\mathbb{N}$ is used to define the stores and heaps.
Let $\mathcal{L}$ be a logic of the form $kSLk'$ or one of its fragments or extensions. As usual, the **satisfiability problem** for $\mathcal{L}$ takes as input a formula $\varphi$ from $\mathcal{L}$ and asks whether there is a memory state $(s, h)$ and an assignment $\overline{f}$ such that $(s, h) \models_{\overline{f}} \varphi$. The **validity problem** is also defined as usual. The **model-checking problem** for $\mathcal{L}$ takes as input a formula $\varphi$ from $\mathcal{L}$, a memory state $(s, h)$ and a finite assignment $\overline{f}$ for free variables from $\varphi$ and asks whether $(s, h) \models_{\overline{f}} \varphi$ ($s$ is finitely encoded and it is restricted to the program variables occurring in $\varphi$). Note that the model-checking problem for first-order logic over finite structures is known to be PSPACE-complete (see e.g. [Var82]) but we cannot conclude a similar statement for fragments of separation logic (even though $s$, $h$ and $\overline{f}$ can be finitely encoded) because separating implication quantifies over an infinite set of disjoint heaps.

When $k = 1$, observe also that heaps are understood as Kripke frames of the form $(\mathbb{N}, R)$ where $R$ is a finite and functional binary relation. Indeed, $R = \{(l, b(l)) : l \in \text{dom}(b)\}$ for some heap $b$. Furthermore, the locations $l$ and $l'$ are in the same connected component whenever $(l, l') \in (R \cup R^{-1})^*$. Usually, connected components are understood as non-singleton components. A finite functional graph $(\mathbb{N}, R)$ can be made of several maximal connected subgraphs so that each connected subgraph is made of a cycle, possibly with trees attached to it.

Finally, it is well-known that there exists a formal relationship between $*$ and $\rightarrow$ since $\rightarrow$ is the **adjunct** of $*$. This means that $(\varphi * \psi) \Rightarrow \chi$ is valid iff $\varphi \Rightarrow (\psi * \chi)$ is valid. Exercise 1.5 is dedicated to this equivalence. This does not imply that the formula $((\varphi * \psi) \Rightarrow \chi) \iff (\varphi \Rightarrow (\psi * \chi))$ is valid (otherwise $*$ and $\rightarrow$ would be inter-definable). However, sometimes, we are able to show that we can get rid of one of the separating connectives, see e.g. Chapter 3 without sacrificing the expressive power.

We also introduce so-called **septraction operator** $\nabla$: $\varphi \nabla \psi$ is defined as the formula $\neg(\varphi \rightarrow \neg \psi)$. As far as we know, its first appearance was in [VP07]. So, $(s, h) \models_{\overline{f}} \varphi \nabla \psi$ iff there is a heap $b'$ disjoint from $h$ such that $(s, b') \models_{\overline{f}} \varphi$ and $(s, h \uplus b') \models_{\overline{f}} \psi$. The septraction operator states the existence of a disjoint heap satisfying a formula and for which its addition to the original heap satisfies another formula.

### 1.2.2 Expressing properties with separation logic

The logic $1SL$ allows one to express different types of properties on memory states. The examples below indeed illustrate the expressivity of $1SL$.

- The domain of the heap has at least $\alpha$ elements: $\neg \text{emp} * \cdots * \neg \text{emp}$ ($\alpha$ times).
1.2. A Core Version of Separation Logic

- The variable \( x \) is allocated in the heap: \( \text{alloc}(x) \equiv (x \leftrightarrow x) \not\vdash \perp \). Sometimes, atomic formulae of the form \( \text{alloc}(x) \) are primitive in the considered fragments of separation logics since \( \text{alloc}(x) \) is a fundamental property to express in a memory state (see Section 5.3).

- The variable \( x \) points to a location that is a self-loop:

\[
\exists u (x \leftrightarrow u) \land (u \leftrightarrow u).
\]

\( x \)

\( \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \equiv \)

In the following, let \( u \) and \( \bar{u} \) be the variables \( u_1 \) and \( u_2 \), in either order. Note that any formula \( \varphi(u) \) with free variable \( u \) can be turned into an equivalent formula with free variable \( \bar{u} \) by permuting the two variables. Below, we define (standard) formulae and explain which properties they express.

- The domain \( \text{dom}(h) \) has exactly one location:

\[
\text{size} = 1 \equiv \neg\text{emp} \land \neg(\neg\text{emp} \ast \neg\text{emp}).
\]

- The domain \( \text{dom}(h) \) has exactly two locations:

\[
\text{size} = 2 \equiv (\neg\text{emp} \ast \neg\text{emp}) \land \neg(\neg\text{emp} \ast \neg\text{emp} \ast \neg\text{emp}).
\]

It is easy to see that one can also define in 1SL that the heap domain has at least \( k \geq 0 \) elements (written \( \text{size} \geq k \)).

- \( u \) has a successor: \( \text{alloc}(u) \equiv \exists \bar{u} u \leftrightarrow \bar{u} \).

- \( u \) has at least \( \alpha \) predecessors: \( \#u \geq \alpha \equiv (\exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftrightarrow u)) \ast \cdots \ast (\exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftrightarrow u)) \).

- \( u \) has at most \( \alpha \) predecessors: \( \#u \leq \alpha \equiv \neg(\#u \geq \alpha + 1) \).

- \( u \) has exactly \( \alpha \) predecessors: \( \#u = \alpha \equiv (\#u \geq \alpha) \land \neg(\#u \geq \alpha + 1) \).
CHAPTER 1. FIRST STEPS IN SEPARATION LOGICS

• There is a non-empty path from \( u \) to \( \overline{u} \) and nothing else except loops that exclude \( \overline{u} \):

\[
\text{reach}'(u, \overline{u}) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \#u = 0 \land \text{alloc}(u) \land \neg \text{alloc}(\overline{u}) \land
\forall \overline{u} \ ((\text{alloc}(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} = 0) \Rightarrow \overline{u} = u) \land
\forall u \ [(\#u \neq 0 \land u \neq \overline{u}) \Rightarrow (\#u = 1 \land \text{alloc}(u))].
\]

• There is a (possibly empty) path from \( u \) to \( \overline{u} \):

\[
\text{reach}(u, \overline{u}) \overset{\text{def}}{=} u = \overline{u} \lor \left[ \top \ast \text{reach}'(u, \overline{u}) \right].
\]

One can show that \( b \models \text{reach}(u, \overline{u}) \) iff there is \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) such that \( b^i(\overline{f(u)}) = \overline{f(u)} \).

The proof for this property can be found in [BDL12, Lemma 2.4] (a similar property has been established for graph logics in [DGG07]).

• There is a (possibly empty) path from \( u \) to \( \overline{u} \) and nothing else, can be defined as follows:

\[
\text{sreach}(u, \overline{u}) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{reach}(u, \overline{u}) \land \neg (\neg \text{emp} \ast \text{reach}(u, \overline{u}))
\]

\( \text{sreach}(u, \overline{u}) \) can be understood as the ‘strict’ reachability predicate and it is usually written as the segment predicate \( \text{ls}(u, \overline{u}) \).

• There is at most a single connected component (and nothing else):

\[
1\text{comp} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg \text{emp} \land \exists u \forall \overline{u} \text{ alloc}(\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \text{reach}(\overline{u}, u).
\]

• There are exactly two components: \( 2\text{comps} \overset{\text{def}}{=} 1\text{comp} \ast 1\text{comp} \).

It is also worth noting that the separation logic 1SL is not necessarily minimal, see obvious reasons below. A similar reasoning applies to any separation logic \( k \text{SL} \). For instance, in 1SL, the atomic formula \( \text{emp} \) is logically equivalent to the following formula using only two quantified variables:

\[
\forall u \neg (\exists u' (u \leftrightarrow u')).
\]

Alternatively, it is equivalent to the following, which uses only one variable:

\[
\forall u \neg ((u \leftrightarrow u) \leftrightarrow \bot).
\]
1.2. A CORE VERSION OF SEPARATION LOGIC

Note that \((u \hookrightarrow u) \rightarrow \bot\) is the way to express \(\text{alloc}(u)\) in 1SL1 (as shown at the top of this section).

More interestingly, the atomic formula of the form \(e = e'\) for some expressions \(e, e'\) is logically equivalent to the following formula by using a new quantified variable \(u\) that does not occur in \(e = e'\):

\[
\forall u ((u \leftrightarrow e) \leftrightarrow (u \leftrightarrow e')).
\]

The formula simply states that adding to the heap a memory cell pointing to the location interpreted by \(e\) amounts to adding a memory cell pointing to the location interpreted by \(e'\).

Below, we define (standard) formulae and explain which properties they express.

- For all \(\sim \in \{\leq, \geq, =\}\) and \(i, \alpha \geq 0\), we define the following formulae:

\[
\begin{align*}
\#u^0 \sim \alpha & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \#u \sim \alpha \\
\#u^{i+1} \sim \alpha & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists \bar{u} \ u \hookrightarrow \bar{u} \wedge \#u^i \sim \alpha \\
\#u^{-i-1} \sim \alpha & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists \bar{u} \ (\bar{u} \hookrightarrow u) \wedge \#u^{-i} \sim \alpha
\end{align*}
\]

For instance, \(\#u^6 \geq 2\) states that there is a (necessarily unique) location at distance 6 from \(u\) and its number of predecessors is greater than or equal to 2. This is illustrated below.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
u & \rightarrow & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bullet & \rightarrow & \bar{u} \end{array}
\]

Moreover, the formula \(\#u^{-5} \leq 2\) states that there is a (not necessarily unique) location at distance \(-5\) from \(u\) and its number of predecessors is not strictly greater than 2. For instance, \(\#u^1 \geq 1\) is logically equivalent to \(\text{alloc}(u)\).

**Remark.** The heap is a finite tree with at least two nodes can be expressed by the formula below:

\[
\neg \text{emp} \wedge \exists u \neg \text{alloc}(u) \wedge (\forall \bar{u} \ \text{alloc}(\bar{u}) \Rightarrow \text{reach}(\bar{u}, u))
\]

Complexity results about two-variable fragments of first-order logic over finite trees can be found in \([\text{BBC}^{+}13]\) but we cannot really take advantage of them since we do not use predicate symbols apart from equality and the points-to relation. By contrast, we do admit separating connectives.
1.2.3 Deduction rules in a Floyd-Hoare proof system

In this section, we introduce deduction rules for some Hoare-like proof system in view of the new commands for mutable shared data structures and in view of the assertion language obtained by adding features from separation logic (presence of $\ast$ and $\ast \neg$).

The mutation command $\left[ e \right] := e'$ leads to the following local rule (small axiom):

$$\{ \exists u e \mapsto u \} \left[ e \right] := e' \{ e \mapsto e' \}$$

local mutation

Note that the precondition and the postcondition are now expressed in 1SL. The global rule can be also derived by application of the frame rule.

$$\{(\exists u e \mapsto u) \ast \phi \} \left[ e \right] := e' \{ e \mapsto e' \ast \phi \}$$

global mutation

Similarly, for performing backward reasoning, one can obtain the following rule:

$$\{(\exists u e \mapsto u) \ast (e \mapsto e' \ast \phi) \} \left[ e \right] := e' \{ \phi \}$$

backwards reasoning mutation

Global rules for deallocation and allocation are provided below:

$$\{(\exists u e \mapsto u) \ast \phi \} \text{dispose(e)} \{ \phi \}$$

$$\{ \phi \} x := \text{cons(e)} \{(x \mapsto e) \ast \phi \}$$

where $x$ is not free in $e$ and in $\phi$.

Small axioms for allocation and deallocation are the following ones:

$$\{ \exists u e \mapsto u \} \text{dispose(e)} \{ \text{emp} \}$$

$$\{ \text{emp} \} x := \text{cons(e)} \{ x \mapsto e \}$$

1.2.4 Classes of formulae

Below, we provide a classification of formulae provided in [Rey02, Section 3], see also [IO01].

Definition 1.2.2. A sentence $\phi$ is pure if the true value of $\phi$ does not depend on the heap, i.e. for all stores $s$, and for all heaps $h$, $h'$, we have $(s, h) \models \phi$ iff $(s, h') \models \phi$. 

\[ \nabla \]
For instance, any Boolean combination built over equalities of the form \(x = y\) is a pure formula. When \(\varphi_1\) and \(\varphi_2\) are pure, the formulae below can be proved valid:

1. \((\varphi_1 \land \varphi_2) \iff (\varphi_1 \ast \varphi_2)\).
2. \((\varphi_1 \Rightarrow \varphi_2) \iff (\varphi_1 \ast \varphi_2)\).

**Definition 1.2.3.** A sentence \(\varphi\) is **intuitionistic** if for all stores \(s\), and for all heaps \(h, h'\), \((h'\) is a conservative extension of \(h\) and \((s, h) \models \varphi\) imply \((s, h') \models \varphi\).\\

As a rule of thumb, intuitionistic semantics for separation logics is present whenever \((s, h) \models \varphi\) and \(h \sqsubseteq h'\) imply \((s, h') \models \varphi\) for a given class of formulae \(\varphi\).

In particular, any pure formula is intuitionistic. A typical example of intuitionistic formula is \(x \mapsto y\). Similarly, assuming that \(\varphi\) and \(\psi\) are intuitionistic formulae, the formulae below are intuitionistic too:

\[
\varphi \land \psi \quad \varphi \lor \psi \quad \varphi \ast \psi \quad \varphi \Rightarrow \psi
\]

Moreover, whenever \(\varphi\) is intuitionistic, the formulae below are valid:

- \((\varphi \ast \top) \Rightarrow \varphi\).
- \((\varphi \Rightarrow (\top \ast \varphi))\).

Strictly exact formulae have been introduced in \(\text{[Yan01]}\).

**Definition 1.2.4.** A sentence \(\varphi\) is **strictly exact** if for all stores \(s\), and for all heaps \(h, h'\), \((s, h) \models \varphi\) and \((s, h') \models \varphi\) implies \(h = h'\).\\

Any formula built over atomic formulae of the form \(x \mapsto y\) and \(\ast\) are strictly exact (see also Lemma \(\text{[5.2.5]}\)). Strictly exact formulae are helpful to establish the validity of the formula below when \(\varphi\) is strictly exact:

\[
((\varphi \ast \top) \land \psi) \Rightarrow (\varphi \ast (\varphi \Rightarrow \psi)).
\]

Strictly exact formulae are clearly domain-exact in the following sense. A sentence \(\varphi\) is **domain-exact** if for all stores \(s\), and for all heaps \(h, h'\), \((s, h) \models \varphi\) and \((s, h') \models \varphi\) implies \(\text{dom}(h) = \text{dom}(h')\).
1.2.5 Decision problems

Let $\mathcal{L}$ be a fragment of the separation logic $k\text{SL}$, $k \geq 1$. Below, we introduce the satisfiability/validity/model-checking/frame inference/abduction problems. Some of the problems have been already mentioned earlier but we prefer to present all of them below, even if repetitions are witnessed.

The **satisfiability problem** for $\mathcal{L}$ is defined as follows:

**Input:** A sentence $\varphi$ in $\mathcal{L}$.

**Question:** Is there a memory state $(s, h)$ such that $(s, h) \models \varphi$?

Similarly, the **validity problem** for $\mathcal{L}$ is defined as follows:

**Input:** A sentence $\varphi$ in $\mathcal{L}$.

**Question:** Is it the case that for all memory states $(s, h)$, we have $(s, h) \models \varphi$?

A variant of the validity problem is the **entailment problem** for $\mathcal{L}$ that is defined as follows:

**Input:** Two sentences $\varphi$ and $\psi$ in $\mathcal{L}$.

**Question:** Is it the case that $\varphi \models \psi$? ($\varphi \models \psi$ is a shortcut for: for all memory states $(s, h)$, $(s, h) \models \varphi$ implies $(s, h) \models \psi$)

Obviously the validity problem is more general than the entailment problem and such a subproblem makes particularly sense when $\mathcal{L}$ is not closed under negation, see e.g. the rule strengthening preconditions in Section 1.1.1. Decidability of the entailment problem implies the decidability of the proof checking in Hoare-style proof systems in which separation logic is used as an assertion language. For example, strengthening of preconditions or weakening of postconditions can be reduced to instances of the entailment problem. Usually, instances of the other deduction rules and the small axioms can be decided by a simple syntactic analysis. For instance, in tools such as Smallfoot, the proof is reconstructed from partial annotations (e.g., loop invariants) and a calculus of strongest postconditions is used to build verification conditions that are precisely instances of the entailment problem.

The **model-checking problem** for $\mathcal{L}$ is defined as follows:

**Input:** A finite memory state $(s, h)$ and a sentence $\varphi$ in $\mathcal{L}$.
1.3. RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER LOGICS

Question: \((s, h) \models \varphi\)?

As mentioned earlier, the separating implication quantifies over an infinite set of disjoint heaps and therefore finiteness of \((s, h)\) does not imply straightforwardly that the model-checking problem for some \(k\text{SL}0\) is decidable. However, the infinite set of disjoint heaps can be sometimes abstracted finitely (see Section 5.3).

Herein, even though we mainly focus on the satisfiability problem, and sometimes on its dual version, the validity problem (or on some of its fragments such as the entailment problem), we present below the frame inference problem and the abduction problem that are quite specific to separation logics. The frame inference problem for \(L\) is defined as follows:

Input: Two sentences \(\varphi\) and \(\psi\) in \(L\).

Question: Is there a sentence \(\chi\) in \(L\) such that \(\varphi \models \psi \ast \chi\)?

The abduction problem for \(L\) is defined as follows:

Input: Two sentences \(\varphi\) and \(\psi\) in \(L\).

Question: Is there a sentence \(\chi\) in \(L\) such that \(\varphi \ast \chi \models \psi\)?

The abduction problem is also called the anti-frame problem. Complexity of the abduction problem for symbolic heaps fragment of \(1\text{SL}0\) can be found in [GKO11].

1.3 Relationships with Other Logics

1.3.1 Logic of bunched implications and its Boolean variant

The logic of bunched implications BI has been introduced in [OP99, Pym02] and it combines connectives from intuitionistic logic with connectives from the multiplicative fragment of linear logic [Gir87]. The logic of bunched implications BI interprets formulae as resources that can be shared or separated. As mentioned previously, the works [IO01, OYR04] by O’Hearn, Reynolds and Ishtiaq have used separation to reason about programs with mutable data structures. More precisely, the assertion language of separation logic is a specialisation of the logic of bunched implications BI when the additive connectives (\(\land, \neg, \Rightarrow, \top, \bot\)) are classical and the multiplicative connectives (\(\ast, \ast\)) admit an intuitionistic interpretation, leading to so-called Boolean BI, see e.g. [IO01, GLW06]. By contrast, BI admits an intuitionistic interpretation of the additive connectives.
Below, we recall the Kripke-style semantics for Boolean BI from [GLW06] providing an alternative to Boolean BI-algebras considered in [Pym02]. A Kripke-style semantics for BI can be found in [GMP02] too. Of course, the logic of bunched implications and Boolean BI admit proof-theoretical definitions and remarkable metatheoretical properties, see e.g. [Pym02], but below we focus on the semantics in order to better illustrate how separation logic can be understood as a specialisation of Boolean BI. By way of example, Boolean BI admits several proof systems, such as labelled sequent calculi [HTG13], nested sequent calculi [PSP13], Belnap-style display calculi [Bro12] or Hilbert-style proof system for a hybrid extension of Boolean BI [BV14]. A major difference between propositional separation logic 1SL0 and propositional Boolean BI is certainly that Boolean BI admits an undecidability validity/satisfiability problem [LG13, BK14] whereas the satisfiability problem for 1SL0 is PSPACE-complete (see Chapter 5). Hence, the specialisation of Boolean BI to memory states, and therefore the introduction of that concrete semantics, has a significant advantage computationally.

A BBI-frame is a triple \((M, \circ, E)\) such that

- \(M\) is a non-empty set,
- \(\circ\) is binary function \(\circ : M \times M \to \mathcal{P}(M)\) such that \(\circ\) is commutative and associative,
- \(E \subseteq M\) is the set of neutral elements, i.e. for all \(m \in M\), \(\{e \circ m : e \in E\} = \{m\}\).

A BBI-model \([BV14]\) is a structure \((M, \circ, E, \mathfrak{B})\) such that \((M, \circ, E)\) is a BBI-frame and \(\mathfrak{B}\) is a map \(\mathfrak{B} : \text{PROP} \to \mathcal{P}(M)\) where \(\text{PROP} = \{p_1, p_2, \ldots\}\) is a countably infinite set of atomic propositions.

Let \((\mathcal{S} \mathfrak{E}_k, \mathfrak{U}_k)\) be the triple such that \(\mathcal{S} \mathfrak{E}_k\) is the set of memory states with \(k \geq 1\) record fields and \(\mathfrak{U}_k\) is the set of memory states of the form \((s, \emptyset)\) where \(\emptyset\) is the unique heap with empty domain. Note that \((\mathcal{S} \mathfrak{E}_k, \mathfrak{U}_k)\) is a BBI-frame where the non-deterministic monoid \((M, \circ, e)\) is made of memory states such that the heaps have \(k\) record fields and the binary function is the set-theoretical version of disjoint union.

The set of formulae for Boolean BI is defined with the following grammar.

\[
\varphi, \psi ::= \text{emp} \mid p \mid \varphi \land \psi \mid \neg \varphi \mid \varphi \ast \psi \mid \varphi \rightarrow \psi.
\]

Let \(m \in M\) and \(\mathfrak{B} : \text{PROP} \to \mathcal{P}(M)\) be a valuation, the satisfaction relation \(\models\) is defined as follows (we omit the obvious standard clauses for Boolean connectives):
1.3. RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER LOGICS

\[ m \models_{\mathcal{B}} \text{emp} \iff m \in E \]
\[ m \models_{\mathcal{B}} p \iff m \in \mathcal{B}(p) \]
\[ m \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi_1 \land \varphi_2 \iff \text{for some } m_1, m_2 \in M, \text{ we have } m \in m_1 \circ m_2, \]
\[ m_1 \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi_1 \text{ and } m_2 \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi_2 \]
\[ m \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi_1 \land \varphi_2 \iff \text{for all } m', m'' \in M \text{ such that } m'' \in m \circ m', \]
\[ \text{if } m' \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi_1 \text{ then } m'' \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi_2. \]

We keep the constant ‘emp for Boolean BI but elements of the set E should be understood as units.

A formula \( \varphi \) is valid iff for all BBI-models \((M, \circ, E, \mathcal{B})\) and for all \( m \in M \), we have \( m \models_{\mathcal{B}} \varphi \). Satisfiability can be formulated as usually, see e.g. [BdRV01].

The satisfiability problem for kSL0 can be reformulated as the satisfiability problem in the BBI-frame \((\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{R}, \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})\) in which atomic propositions are of the form \( x_i \hookrightarrow x_j \) or \( x_i = x_j \) and the valuations \( \mathcal{B} \) are constrained in such a way that \( (s, h) \in \mathcal{B}(x_i \hookrightarrow x_j) \iff h(s(x_i)) = s(x_j) \). Similarly, we require that \( (s, h) \in \mathcal{B}(x_i = x_j) \iff s(x_i) = s(x_j) \).

Provability in Boolean BI is obtained by adding the rule “from \( \varphi \vdash \neg\neg\psi \) conclude \( \varphi \vdash \psi \)” to the natural deduction calculus of BI [Pym02]. That is why, Boolean BI is often abbreviated as BI + \{\neg\neg\psi \Rightarrow \psi\}. It is also possible to design an Hilbert-tyle proof system for Boolean BI, as done in [GLW06], so that the notion of theorem for Boolean BI is clearly defined, but omitted herein.

**Theorem 1.3.1.** [GLW06] Theorems of Boolean BI are exactly the formulae valid in the class of BBI-models.

In order to be precise, the BBI-models introduced in [GLW06] assumes that \( E \) is a singleton set (single-unit condition) and it is shown in [BV14] that the class of single-unit BBI-models is not definable in Boolean BI. By contrast, it has been shown recently that validity in Boolean BI is not sensitive to the single unit condition [LG14]. Furthermore, we invite the reader to consult [BV14] for additional comparisons between variants of BBI-models and separation models. By analogy, the modal logic K is complete for the class of irreflexive frames but irreflexivity is not a property that is modally definable, see e.g. [BdRV01].

1.3.2 First-order logic with second-order features

In this section, let us focus on 1SL without program variables. Models for 1SL can be viewed as first-order structures of the form \((\mathcal{N}, \mathcal{R})\) where \( \mathcal{R} \) is a finite and deterministic binary relation. We have seen in Section 1.2.2 that there is a formula
reach(u, ũ) in 1SL2(∗) such that h |= reach(u, ũ) iff \( \overline{f(u)}R^*\overline{f}(\bar{u}) \), where \( R^* \) is the reflexive and transitive closure of \( R \) with

\[
R \overset{\text{def}}{=} \:\{(l, l') : l \in \text{dom}(h), h(l) = l'\}.
\]

Anyway, 1SL without the separating connectives is clearly a fragment of first-order logic on structures of the form \((\mathbb{N}, R)\) where \( R \) is a finite and deterministic binary relation. Adding the separating conjunction provides a little bit of second-order logic, for instance by encoding the reachability relation. Given a binary relation \( R \), we write \( \text{DTC}(R) \) to denote the deterministic transitive closure of \( R \) defined as the transitive closure of the relation

\[
R_{\text{det}} = \{(l, l') \in R : \text{there is no } l'' \neq l' \text{ such that } (l, l'') \in R\}.
\]

So, when \((\mathbb{N}, R)\) is an 1SL model, \( \text{DTC}(R) \) can be defined in 1SL2(∗) itself.

In fragments of classical logic, the presence of the deterministic transitive closure operator can lead to undecidability where the operator on the binary relation \( R \) amounts to consider the transitive closure of the deterministic restriction \( R_{\text{det}} \). In [GOR99], it is shown that FO2 (i.e. first-order logic restricted to two quantified variables) augmented with the deterministic transitive closure operator has an undecidable finitary satisfiability problem. By contrast, FO2 has the finite model property and the satisfiability problem is \( \text{NExpTime} \)-complete, see e.g. [GKV97]. Recently, FO2 augmented with the deterministic transitive closure of a single binary relation is shown to have a decidable and \( \text{ExpSpace} \)-complete satisfiability problem [CKM14]. The works [GOR99] and [CKM14] contain numerous undecidability results related to the deterministic transitive closure operator but this involves more than one binary relation, whereas the models for 1SL have a unique deterministic binary relation. However, several results presented in [CKM14] are quite optimal with respect to the syntactic resources.

Meanwhile, Yorsh et al. [YRS*06] study a decidable version of first-order logic with reachability; they get decidability by making severe syntactic restrictions on the placement of quantifiers and on the reachability constraints, although the resulting logic is capable of describing useful linked data structures (see also the subsequent works [LQ08, PWZ13]).

### 1.3.3 Translation into dyadic second-order logic

Next we define weak second-order logic \( k\text{WSOL} \), for \( k \geq 1 \). The sets \( \text{PVAR} \) and \( \text{FVAR} \) are defined as for \( k\text{SL} \) as well as the expressions \( e \).
We also consider a family \( \text{SVAR} = (\text{SVAR}_i)_{i \geq 1} \) of second-order variables, denoted by \( P, Q, R, \ldots \) that are interpreted as finite relations over \( \mathbb{N} \). Each variable in \( \text{SVAR}_i \) is interpreted as an \( i \)-ary relation.

As for \( k\text{SL} \), models are memory states with \( k \geq 1 \) record fields. A second-order assignment \( \mathcal{f} \) is an interpretation of the second-order variables such that for every \( P \in \text{SVAR}_i \), \( \mathcal{f}(P) \) is a finite subset of \( \mathbb{N}^i \).

Atomic formulae take the form

\[
\pi ::= e = e' \mid e \leftrightarrow e_1, \ldots, e_k \mid P(e_1, \ldots, e_n) \mid \text{emp} \mid \bot.
\]

**Formulæ** of \( k\text{WSOL} \) are defined by the grammar

\[
\varphi, \psi ::= \pi \mid \varphi \land \psi \mid \neg \varphi \mid \exists u \varphi \mid \exists P \varphi
\]

where \( P \in \text{SVAR}_n \) for some \( n \geq 1 \). We write \( k\text{MSOL} \) (monadic second-order logic) to denote the restriction of \( k\text{WSOL} \) to second-order variables in \( \text{SVAR}_1 \) and \( k\text{DSOL} \) (dyadic second-order logic) to denote its restriction to \( \text{SVAR}_2 \). Like \( k\text{SL} \), models for \( k\text{WSOL} \) are memory states and quantifications are done over all the possible locations. The satisfaction relation \( \models \) is defined as follows (\( \mathcal{f} \) is a hybrid valuation providing interpretation for first-order and second-order variables):

\[
(s, h) \models \exists P \varphi \quad \text{iff} \quad \exists \text{ a finite relation } R \subseteq \mathbb{N}^n \text{ such that } \\
(s, h) \models \mathcal{f}(P) \varphi \text{ where } P \in \text{SVAR}_n
\]

The satisfiability problem for \( k\text{WSOL} \) takes as input a sentence \( \varphi \) in \( k\text{WSOL} \) and asks whether there is a memory state \( (s, h) \) such that \( (s, h) \models \varphi \). By Trakhtenbrot's Theorem \cite{Tra63,BGG97}, the satisfiability problem for \( k\text{DSOL} \) (and therefore for \( k\text{WSOL} \)) is undecidable since finite satisfiability for first-order logic with a unique binary relation symbol is undecidable. Note that a monadic second-order variable can be simulated by a binary second-order variable from \( \text{SVAR}_2 \), and this can be used to relativise a formula from DSOL in order to check finite satisfiability.

**Theorem 1.3.2.** [BDL12] \( k\text{WSOL} \) and \( k\text{DSOL} \) have the same expressive power.

It is just necessary to show how to reduce \( k\text{WSOL} \) to \( k\text{DSOL} \) since \( k\text{DSOL} \) is a syntactic fragment of \( k\text{WSOL} \). Atomic formulæ \( P(u) \) with the monadic second-order variable \( P \) are replaced by \( P^{\text{new}}(u, u) \) where \( P^{\text{new}} \) is a fresh dyadic second-order variable. Furthermore, \( P(u_1, \ldots, u_n) \) with \( n > 2 \) is substituted by

\[
\exists u \bigwedge_{i=1}^{n} P^{\text{new}}_i(u, u_i)
\]
where $P_{1}^{\text{new}}, \ldots, P_{n}^{\text{new}}$ are fresh dyadic second-order variables used only for $P$. The value $k$ plays no special role here.

It has been recently shown in [DD14] that $1SL2(\rightarrow)$ is as expressive as $1WSOL$. The proof hinges on the fact that that every sentence from $1DSOL$ has an equivalent sentence in $1SL2(\rightarrow)$, as discussed in Chapter 3. Translation in the other direction concerns us below. Separation logic $1SL$ can easily be translated into $1DSOL$. The presentation given here is by a simple internalisation.

First, some formula definitions useful for the translation.

\[ \text{init}(P) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u v (P(u, v) \iff u \leftrightarrow v) \]
\[ \text{heap}(P) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u v w ((P(u, v) \land P(u, w)) \Rightarrow v = w) \quad \text{(functionality)} \]
\[ P = Q \uplus R \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u v ((P(u, v) \iff (Q(u, v) \lor R(u, v))) \land \neg(Q(u, v) \land R(u, v))) \]

The formula \text{init} initialises a binary relation $P$ to be precisely the heap graph; this is a notational convenience for the top level of the translation. \text{heap} requires that a relation $P$ is functional and is used to ensure that subheaps (as interpreted by second-order variables) are in fact heaps. Finally, $P = Q \uplus R$ composes two relations representing subheaps ($Q$ and $R$) into one—or alternatively, it can be seen as decomposing $P$ into two disjoint pieces; it is used in both “directions” in the translation.

Let the top-level translation \( t(\varphi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists P (\text{init}(P) \land t_{P}(\varphi)) \), where \( t_{P} \) is the translation with respect to $P$ as the “current” heap for interpretation. It is homomorphic for Boolean connectives, and otherwise has this definition:

\[ t_{P}(u \leftrightarrow v) \overset{\text{def}}{=} P(u, v) \]
\[ t_{P}(\varphi \ast \psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists Q Q' (P = Q \uplus Q' \land t_{Q}(\varphi) \land t_{Q'}(\psi)) \]
\[ t_{P}(\varphi \rightarrow \psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall Q \big((\exists Q' \text{ heap}(Q') \land Q' = Q \uplus P \land \text{heap}(Q) \land t_{Q}(\varphi)) \]
\[ \Rightarrow (\exists Q' \text{ heap}(Q') \land Q' = Q \uplus P \land t_{Q'}(\psi)) \big) \]

\textbf{Theorem 1.3.3.} (see e.g. [BDL12]) There exists a translation $t$ such that for any $1SL$ sentence $\varphi$ and for any memory state $(s, h)$, we have $(s, h) \models \varphi$ in $1SL$ iff $(s, h) \models t(\varphi)$ in $1DSOL$.

Note that, then, there must also exist a translation from the smaller fragment $1SL2(\rightarrow)$ into $1DSOL$. This result (along with Theorem 1.3.2 above) will be useful later in showing expressive power results of separation logic.
1.3. RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER LOGICS

**General inductive predicates** Using general inductive predicates provides another means to define second-order properties on heaps and this is a very useful feature to describe the shape of data structures, such as linked lists for instance. Semantics for general inductive predicates using least fixpoint operators can be naturally encoded in second-order logic, see e.g. [QGSM13]. Until very recently, such predicates are hard-coded but new results on the satisfiability and entailment problems for general inductive predicates have been obtained, see e.g. [IRS13, AGH+14, BFGN14]. Whereas, it is shown in [BFGN14] that the satisfiability problem for many standard fragments of separation logic augmented with general inductive predicates is decidable and complexity is characterised (see also [IRS13] for bounded tree-width structures), other fragments have been shown to admit decidable entailment problem [IRS13, AGH+14]. These are general results that are very promising for automatic verification of programs, despite the generality of the defined predicates.

### 1.3.4 Undecidability

A remarkable result about the decidability status of (first-order) separation logic is stated below and is due to [COY01] (see also [Yan01, Section 8.1] for a related undecidability result).

**Theorem 1.3.4.** [COY01] The satisfiability problem for 2SL is undecidable.

The proof is based on the fact that finitary satisfiability for classical predicate logic restricted to a single binary predicate symbol is undecidable [Tra63], see also [BGG97]. This means that given a first-order sentence \( \varphi \) built over the binary predicate symbol \( R \), checking whether there is a finite structure \( (D, R) \) (a finite directed graph) such that \( (D, R) \models \varphi \) (in the first-order sense) is undecidable. Indeed, any such a structure can be encoded (modulo isomorphism) by some heap \( h \) and some distinguished location \( l_0 \) such that:

- \( l_0 \notin \text{dom}(h) \),
- \( D = \{ l \in \mathbb{N} : h(l) = (l_0, l_0) \} \),
- \( R = \{ (l, l') \in D^2 : \text{there is } l'' \text{ such that } h(l'') = (l, l') \} \).

Roughly speaking, a pair in \( R \) is encoded by a memory cell in \( h \). Let us define the translation \( T \) such that \( \varphi \) has a finite model \( (\mathcal{D}, R) \) iff \( T(\varphi) \) is satisfiable in 2SL.

---

Demri, Deters: Logical Investigations on Separation Logics (Draft) – September 8, 2015 – ESSLLI’15
with

\[ T(\phi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u, \text{nil} \ (u \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \land (\neg \exists u', u'' \ u' \leftrightarrow u'', u''') \land tr(\phi) \]

where \( tr(\cdot) \) is homomorphic for Boolean connectives and it is defined below:

\[
\begin{align*}
tr(u_i = u_j) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} (u_i = u_j) \land (u_i \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \land (u_j \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \\
tr(R(u_i, u_j)) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} (u_i \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \land (u_j \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \land (\exists u (u \leftrightarrow u_i, u_j)) \\
tr(\exists u \ \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u (u \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \land tr(\psi) \\
tr(\forall u \ \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u (u \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \Rightarrow tr(\psi).
\end{align*}
\]

Observe that \( \text{nil} \) is understood as a distinguished variable whose interpretation is not in the heap domain. It is also worth noting that \( T(\phi) \) makes no use of program variables, separating conjunction, or separating implication. In a sense, the undecidability of 2SL, as explained above, is not very much related to separating connectives, but rather to the fact that heaps with two record fields can encode finite binary relations.

**Theorem 1.3.5.** [COY01] The set of valid formulae for 2SL is not recursively enumerable.

As a consequence, 2SL is not finitely axiomatisable. Indeed, \( \phi \) is finitely valid iff \( \forall u, \text{nil} ((u \leftrightarrow \text{nil}, \text{nil}) \land (\neg \exists u', u'' \ u' \leftrightarrow u'', u''')) \Rightarrow tr(\phi) \) is 2SL valid. Since this is a logarithmic-space reduction and since the set of finitely valid formulae is not recursively enumerable, this leads to Theorem 1.3.5. It seems that this fact is not so well-known (this is of course mentioned in [COY01], and in a few other places such as in [Web04, Section 5] or in [Qiu13, Chapter 2]) but it has unpleasant consequences for defining proof systems for separation logics with concrete heaps (see e.g., [GM10, LP14, HCGT14, HGT15]). Note also that the result applies to any \( k \)SL since 2SL can be viewed then as a syntactic fragment of \( k \)SL as soon as \( k \geq 2 \).

In Chapter 3, we are able to show a similar result with 1SL by using directly first-order theory of natural numbers with addition and multiplication.

### 1.3.5 Modal logics with updates

The separating connectives \( * \) and \( \rightarrow \) force the interpretation of subformulae in alternative heaps, which is reminiscent to the destructive aspect of van Benthem’s sabotage modal logic [vB05]. Indeed, sabotage modal logic (SML) defined in [vB05]...
1.4. EXERCISES

has the ability to remove states in a transition system. A variant of SML is introduced in \cite{LR03} with the possibility to withdraw transitions, a feature also shared with logics from \cite{PW04, Dem05, Göl07}, see also logics of public announcements \cite{Lut06}. The satisfiability problem for that variant is shown undecidable in \cite{LR03} (another variant is shown undecidable in \cite{Roh04} in which deletion of the transitions is done locally to the current state). Other modal logics updating the model while evaluating formulae have been considered in a systematic way in \cite{ABdCH09} and specific instances can be found in \cite{Mer09, AFH14}.

1.4 Exercises

Exercise 1.1. Heaps can be understood as canonical elements of equivalence classes. Given a bijection \( \sigma : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \), we write \( h' = h \circ \sigma \) to denote the heap whose graph is \( \{ (\sigma(l), \sigma(h(l))) : l \in \text{dom}(h) \} \). Similarly, we write \( f' = f \circ \sigma \) to denote the assignment such that \( f'(u_i) = \sigma(f(u_i)) \).

a) Show that for all formulae \( \varphi \) in 1SL without program variables, we have \( h \models_1 \varphi \) iff \( h' \models_1 \varphi \).

b) Extend the property when memory states are involved (i.e. with stores).

Exercise 1.2. Show that \( * \) is commutative, associative and \( \text{emp} \) is a neutral element, i.e. show that the formulae below are valid.

a) \( \varphi_1 * \varphi_2 \Leftrightarrow \varphi_2 * \varphi_1 \).

b) \( (\varphi_1 * \varphi_2) * \varphi_3 \Leftrightarrow \varphi_1 * (\varphi_2 * \varphi_3) \).

c) \( \varphi * \text{emp} \Leftrightarrow \varphi \).

Exercise 1.3. Distributivity laws are best illustrated by showing that the formulae below are valid.

a) \( (\varphi_1 \lor \varphi_2) * \psi \Leftrightarrow (\varphi_1 * \psi) \lor (\varphi_2 * \psi) \).

b) \( (\varphi_1 \land \varphi_2) * \psi \Rightarrow (\varphi_1 * \psi) \land (\varphi_2 * \psi) \).

c) \( \exists u \varphi * \psi \Leftrightarrow \exists u (\varphi * \psi) \), assuming that \( u \) is not free in \( \psi \).

d) \( \forall u \varphi * \psi \Rightarrow \forall u (\varphi * \psi) \), assuming that \( u \) is not free in \( \psi \).
Exercise 1.4. Show that if $\varphi_1 \Rightarrow \varphi_2$ and $\varphi'_1 \Rightarrow \varphi'_2$ are valid, then $(\varphi_1 \ast \varphi'_1) \Rightarrow (\varphi_2 \ast \varphi'_2)$ is valid too.

Exercise 1.5. Let $k \geq 1$ and, $\varphi$, $\psi$ and $\chi$ be formulae in $kSL0$. Show that $(\varphi \ast \psi) \Rightarrow \chi$ is valid iff $\varphi \Rightarrow (\psi \Rightarrow \chi)$ is valid.

Exercises 1.2–1.5 are inspired from properties stated in [Rey02, Section 3].

Exercise 1.6. Show that the local mutation rule from Section 1.2.3 is valid.

Exercise 1.7. Let $\varphi$ be a formula in $1SL0$ built without $\hookrightarrow$ and $\text{emp}$. Show that $\varphi$ is a pure formula.

Exercise 1.8. Let $\varphi_1$ and $\psi_2$ be pure formulae. Show that the formulae below are valid:

a) $(\varphi_1 \land \varphi_2) \Leftrightarrow (\varphi_1 \ast \varphi_2)$.

b) $(\varphi_1 \Rightarrow \varphi_2) \Leftrightarrow (\varphi_1 \ast \varphi_2)$.

Exercise 1.9. Assuming that $\varphi$ is intuitionistic, show that $(\varphi \ast \top) \Rightarrow \varphi$ and $(\varphi \Rightarrow (\top \Rightarrow \varphi)$ are valid formulae.

Exercise 1.10. Let $e$, $e'$ be two expressions in $1SL$ and $u$ be a variable that does not occur in $e = e'$. Show that for all memory states $(s, b)$ and for all assignments $\uparrow$, we have $[e] = [e']$ iff $(s, b)$ under the assignment $\uparrow$ satisfies $\forall u ((u \leftrightarrow e) \leftrightarrow (u \leftrightarrow e'))$.

Exercise 1.11. Show that the validity of $\varphi \Rightarrow (\psi \Rightarrow \chi)$ and $\varphi' \Rightarrow \psi$ implies the validity of $\varphi \ast \varphi' \Rightarrow \chi$.

Exercise 1.12. The version of $kSL0$ defined in this chapter admits an intuitionistic interpretation of the points-to atomic formulae, since whenever $(s, b) \models e \leftrightarrow e'$ and $b'$ is a conservative extension of $b$ (written $b \subseteq b'$), we still have $(s, b') \models e \leftrightarrow e'$. Strictly speaking, a classical version of $kSL0$ should admit atomic formulae of the form $e \leftrightarrow e'$ instead, but for $kSL0$, this does not make a substantial difference in the classical framework.

Now, let us restrict ourselves to the formulae below:

$$\varphi, \psi ::= e \leftrightarrow e' \mid e = e' \mid e \neq e' \mid \varphi \land \psi \mid \varphi \lor \psi \mid \varphi \Rightarrow \psi \mid \varphi \ast \psi \mid \varphi \Rightarrow \psi \mid \forall u \varphi$$
1.4. EXERCISES

(no negation, no atomic formula \textsf{emp}). In order to define the intuitionistic version of \textit{kSL0}, we keep the clauses for the satisfaction relation from classical \textit{kSL0} except that we provide an intuitionistic interpretation for the connective $\Rightarrow$:

$$(s,h) \models_i \varphi \Rightarrow \psi$$
iff for all $h \subseteq h'$, we have if $(s,h') \models_i \varphi$, then $(s,h') \models_i \psi$.

Show that the intuitionistic version of \textit{kSL0} admits the monotonicity condition: if $(s,h) \models_i \varphi$ and $h \subseteq h'$, then $(s,h') \models_i \varphi$.

Exercise 1.13. Let $\varphi$ be a sentence in \textit{kSL} without any program variable. Show that $\varphi$ is valid iff $\text{emp} \land (\top \land \varphi) \ast \top$ is satisfiable.

Exercise 1.14. Show that $\text{reach}(u, \overline{u})$ as defined in the chapter corresponds indeed to the reachability predicate.

Exercise 1.15. Show that the formula below in \textit{1SL2} characterizes the heaps with a unique connected component and with a non-empty domain:

$$\neg \text{emp} \land \exists u \forall \overline{u} \text{alloc}(\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \text{reach}(\overline{u}, u).$$
Chapter 2

PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>PSPACE-Completeness and Expressive Power</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1</td>
<td>PSPACE-hard fragments of kSL0</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.2</td>
<td>Boolean formulae for propositional separation logics</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>NP and PTIME Fragments</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Undecidable Propositional Separation Logics</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1</td>
<td>A brief introduction to abstract separation logics</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.2</td>
<td>Encoding runs of Minsky machines</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this chapter, we consider decidability and computational complexity issues for propositional fragments of separation logics of the form kSL0 with \( k \geq 1 \). The upper bounds are mainly proved in Chapter 5 Section 2.1 is dedicated to the presentation of the PSPACE-completeness for the satisfiability and model-checking problems for kSL0 based on developments from [COY01]. Proofs for PSPACE-hardness are provided. Section 2.2 contains a presentation of the fragments of kSL0 made of symbolic heaps and for which the entailment problem and the satisfiability problem can be solved in polynomial time [CHO+11]. It is very essential that the reasoning for this fragment is tractable since it is used in early tools dealing with separation logic such as Smallfoot [BCO05]. Abstract separation logics are presented in Section 2.3 in such versions of separation logics atomic
propositions are introduced and can be true in any part of the model (contrary to points-to formulae), see also Section 1.3.1. Moreover, models are more abstract and correspond to cancellative partial commutative monoids. We show that the satisfiability problem for a few abstract separation logics is undecidable based on developments from [LG13, BK14, DD15a]. A reduction from the halting problem for Minsky machines is designed.

**Highlights of the chapter**

1. **PSpace-hardness proof** for several fragments of 1SL0 by reduction from QBF as done in [COY01] (straightforward extensions to kSL0 with k > 1).

2. Presentation of the symbolic heaps fragment (and variants) that is used in the tool Smallfoot (Section 2.2) as well as recent complexity results.

3. Undecidability proof for propositional separation logic based on memory states (Theorem 2.3.1) inspired from the original proof in [BK10, LWG10] but adapted to avoid any proof-theoretical consideration [DD15b].

## 2.1 PSPACE-Completeness and Expressive Power

### 2.1.1 PSPACE-hard fragments of kSL0

Most probably, NP-completeness already implies non-tractability but actually, propositional separation logic of the form kSL0 with k ≥ 1 can be potentially of even worse complexity, see e.g. [COY01, Rey02].

**Theorem 2.1.1.** [COY01] For every k ≥ 1, the satisfiability problem for (propositional) kSL0 is PSPACE-complete.

The proof for the PSPACE upper bound is provided in Section 5.3 in which other results about the expressive power of kSL0 are discussed. Meanwhile, below, we show that 1SL0 is PSPACE-hard by reduction from QBF, following developments from [COY01]. QBF formulae are built from propositional formulae with the addition of propositional quantifications of the form ∀ p ψ and ∃ p ψ. Below, without any loss of generality, we consider QBF formulae in prenex normal form. We consider several fragments of 1SL0 in order to pinpoint different causes for PSPACE-hardness.
CHAPTER 2. PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

Let \( Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi \) be a QBF formula with \( \{Q_1, \ldots, Q_n\} \subseteq \{\exists, \forall\} \) and \( \varphi \) is a propositional formula built over the atomic propositions in \( \{p_1, \ldots, p_n\} \) and the Boolean connectives \( \land, \lor \) and \( \neg \) (only in front of atomic propositions). The formula is said to be in prenex normal form and every QBF formula can be reduced in logarithmic space to an equivalent formula in such a form. We recall that given a propositional valuation \( v : \text{PROP} \rightarrow \{\bot, \top\} \), we have \( v \models \exists p \varphi \) iff there is \( b \in \{\bot, \top\} \) such that \( v[p \mapsto b] \models \varphi \). Similarly, \( v \models \forall p \varphi \) iff for all \( b \in \{\bot, \top\} \), we have \( v[p \mapsto b] \models \varphi \). Satisfiability problem for QBF formulae is known to be PSPACE-complete [Sto77].

In the translation of the formula \( Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi \), we consider \( n \) program variables, say \( x_1, \ldots, x_n \) so that the truth of \( p_i \) is encoded by the satisfaction of \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \) (that can be defined by \( (x_i \leftrightarrow x_i) \mp \bot \)). Similarly, we write \( x_i \leftrightarrow \bot \) as an abbreviation for \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \land \neg(\neg\text{emp} \mp \neg\text{emp}) \). Obviously, \( x_i \leftrightarrow \bot \) holds true when \( x_i \) is the unique location belonging to the heap domain.

In order to encode independence between the different variables, we enforce that all the program variables have distinct values in the original heap. Moreover, existential quantification over \( p_i \) amounts to restrict the current heap either by the empty heap (in that case \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \) holds in the other heap) or by a unique memory cell so that \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \) holds, which allows to simulate quantification. However, it is necessary to enforce in the initial heap that \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \) holds for any program variable \( x_i, i \in [1, n] \). Let us define the map \( tr \) as follows when \( tr \) is homomorphic for Boolean connectives:

\[
\begin{align*}
tr(p_i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{alloc}(x_i) \\
tr(\exists p_i \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\text{emp} \lor x_i \leftrightarrow \bot) \ast tr(\psi) \\
tr(\forall p_i \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg((\text{emp} \lor x_i \leftrightarrow \bot) \ast \neg tr(\psi)).
\end{align*}
\]

Lemma 2.1.2. The formula \( Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi \) is QBF satisfiable iff

\[
\chi \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\bigwedge_{i \neq j} x_i \neq x_j) \land (\bigwedge_i \text{alloc}(x_i)) \land tr(Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi)
\]

is 1SL0 satisfiable.

Proof. Let us start by introducing auxiliary definitions. For every \( j \in [1, n + 1] \), we write \( \varphi_j \) to denote the formula \( Q_j p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi \). So, by definition, we have \( \varphi_1 = Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi \) and by convention \( \varphi_{n+1} = \varphi \). Note also that the atomic propositions in \( \varphi_j \) that are not in the scope of a propositional quantification belongs to the (possibly empty) set \( \{p_i : i \in [1, j - 1]\} \).
2.1. PSPACE-COMPLETENESS AND EXPRESSIVE POWER

Given a memory state \((s, h)\) and a propositional valuation \(v\), we write \((s, h) \approx_j v\) to denote the fact that:

- For all \(i \neq i' \in [1, n]\), we have \(s(x_i) \neq s(x_{i'})\) (this only depends on \(s\)).
- For all \(i \in [j, n]\), we have \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h)\) (this only depends on the memory state).
- For all \(i \in [1, j - 1]\), we have \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h)\) iff \(v(p_i) = \top\).

It is easy to establish that \((s, h) \approx_j v\) for some \(v\) is equivalent to \(s, h) \models (\bigwedge_{i \neq j} x_i \neq x_{i'} \land (\bigwedge_{i \in [j, n]} \text{alloc}(x_i)))\).

By induction on \(j\), we show that for all \(j \in [1, n + 1]\), if \((s, h) \approx_j v\), then \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi_j)\) iff \(v \models \varphi_j\). The base case in the induction corresponds to \(j = n + 1\) and therefore the induction step goes backwards.

Before providing the proof by induction, let us check that this is sufficient to establish the statement in the lemma. If \((s, h) \approx_1 v\), then \((s, h)\) satisfies \((\bigwedge_{i \neq j} x_i \neq x_{j'}) \land (\bigwedge_{i \in [j, n]} \text{alloc}(x_i))\). Suppose that \(v \models Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi\). Let us consider the memory state \((s, h)\) such that: for all \(i \in [1, n]\), we have \(s(x_i) = i\) and \(h(i) = i\).

Obviously, \((s, h) \approx_1 v\) and therefore by the property above, we get \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi_1)\), that is \((s, h) \models \varphi_1\). Consequently, \((s, h) \models \varphi\). Now suppose that \((s, h) \models \varphi\). Let us take any propositional valuation \(v\). We have \((s, h) \approx_1 v\) and therefore by the property above, we get \(v \models \varphi_1\), that is \(v \models \varphi\).

Now let us consider the proof of the above property.

**Base case:** \(j = n + 1\).

So, \(\varphi_j = \varphi_{n+1} = \varphi\). The proof is by structural induction but the cases in the induction step with \(\neg\) (in front of atomic propositions), \(\lor\) and \(\land\) are by an easy verification. We assume that \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\) and let us consider \(p_i\) with \(i < n + 1\).

If \(v \models p_i\), then \(v(p_i) = \top\) and since \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\), we get \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and \((s, h) \models \text{alloc}(x_i) (= \text{tr}(p_i))\). Conversely, if \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(p_i)\), then \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and since \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\) we get \(v(p_i) = \top\), whence \(v \models p_i\).

For the induction step with \(j < n + 1\), below we deal with the case \(\varphi_j = \exists p_j \varphi_{j+1}\). The case \(\varphi_j = \forall p_j \varphi_{j+1}\) is omitted since it is very similar. We assume that \((s, h) \approx_j v\).

First suppose that \(v \models \exists p_j \varphi_{j+1}\). This means that there is \(b \in \{\top, \bot\}\) such that \(v[p_j \mapsto b] \models \varphi_{j+1}\).

Case 1: \(b = \bot\).

Let \(b'\), \(b''\) be such that \(b = b' \uplus b''\) and \(\text{dom}(b'') = \{s(x_j)\}\). We know that such
a separation of h is possible since (s, h) \approx_j v (in particular s(x_j) \in \text{dom}(h)). We get that (s, h') \approx_{j+1} v[p_j \mapsto \bot] and therefore by the induction hypothesis, we have (s, h') \models tr(q_{j+1}). So, (s, h) \models (\text{emp} \lor (x_j \mapsto *)) \ast tr(q_{j+1}) = a \text{ fortiori}, (s, h) \models (\text{emp} \lor (x_j \mapsto -)) \ast tr(q_{j+1}).

\text{Case 2: } b = T.

We get that (s, h) \approx_{j+1} v[p_j \mapsto T] and therefore by induction hypothesis, (s, h) \models tr(q_{j+1}). So, (s, h) \models \text{emp} \ast tr(q_{j+1}) = a \text{ fortiori}, (s, h) \models (\text{emp} \lor (x_j \mapsto -)) \ast tr(q_{j+1}).

Now suppose that (s, h) \models (\text{emp} \lor (x_j \mapsto -)) \ast tr(q_{j+1}).

\text{Case 1: } (s, h) \models \text{emp} \ast tr(q_{j+1}).

So, (s, h) \models tr(q_{j+1}) and since (s, h) \approx_{j+1} v[p_j \mapsto T], by the induction hypothesis, we get v[p_j \mapsto T] \models q_{j+1}, whence v \models \exists p_j q_{j+1}.

\text{Case 2: } (s, h) \models (x_j \mapsto -) \ast tr(q_{j+1}).

So, there are heaps h' and h'' such that (s, h') \models x_j \mapsto - and (s, h') \models tr(q_{j+1}). Since by construction, (s, h') \approx_{j+1} v[p_j \mapsto \bot], by the induction hypothesis, we get v[p_j \mapsto \bot] \models q_{j+1} and therefore v \models \exists p_j q_{j+1}.

QED

The above reduction implies that the satisfiability problem for the logic kSL0(\ast) is PSPACE-hard too, assuming that the atomic formulae are of the form emp, alloc(x) and x = y.

Corollary 2.1.3. [COY01] For every k \geq 1, the satisfiability and model-checking problems for kSL0 is PSPACE-hard.

Proof. PSPACE-hardness of the satisfiability problem is a direct consequence of Lemma 2.1.2 since QBF is PSPACE-complete. Note that Lemma 2.1.2 is stated for k = 1 but it is easy to adapt it to any fixed k > 1 since the heap domain can be constrained only by atomic formulae of the form alloc(x).

Now, it is easy to design a logarithmic-space reduction from QBF into the model-checking for 1SL0. Let Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi be a QBF formula. We define the memory state (s, h) such that for all i \in [1, n], we have s(x_i) = i and h(i) = i. Obviously, (s, h) \models (\land_{i \neq j} x_i \neq x_j) \land (\land_i \text{alloc}(x_i)). Let v_\bot be the propositional valuation that returns always the constant value \bot. According to previous developments, we have (s, h) \models tr(Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi) \iff v_\bot \models Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi. The proof for k > 1 is similar since h(i) defined above can be adapted to be a k-tuple made of k times the value i.

QED

A substantial fragment of 1SL0 that admits NP-complete satisfiability and model-checking problems is presented in Exercise 2.4. Other fragments have been
2.1. PSPACE-COMPLETENESS AND EXPRESSIVE POWER

considered in [COY01] by restricting further the use of Boolean or separating connectives. Below we show that decision problems for kSL0(◦) are PSPACE-hard too, assuming that the atomic formulae are of the form alloc(x) and x = y (see a precise formulation of the fragment in Lemma 2.1.6).

Let \( Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi \) be a QBF formula with \([Q_1, \ldots, Q_n] \subseteq [\exists, \forall]\) and \( \varphi \) is a propositional formula built over the atomic propositions in \{\( p_1, \ldots, p_n \}\} and the Boolean connectives \( \land, \lor, \land, \lor, \land \) and \( \neg \) (only in front of atomic propositions). This time, the truth of the atomic proposition \( p_i \) is encoded by the truth of \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \) whereas the falsehood of \( p_i \) is encoded by the truth of \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \); \( x_i^\top \) and \( x_i^\bot \) are new program variables associated to \( p_i \). Obviously, \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \) and \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \) may hold simultaneously, even if \( x_i^\top \) and \( x_i^\bot \) are interpreted differently. That is why, we introduce the formulae \( \text{init}_i \) and \( \text{ok}_i \) below. The formula \( \text{init}_i \) holds true when the encoding of the truth value of \( p_i \) is not yet done, i.e. none of \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \) and \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \) holds true. Similarly, \( \text{ok}_i \) holds true when the encoding of the truth value of \( p_i \) is done, i.e. exactly one formula among \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \) and \( \text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \) holds true. This is generalized to sets of indices as defined below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{init}_i & \triangleq \neg \text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \land \neg \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \\
\text{ok}_i & \triangleq (\text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \land \neg \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot)) \lor (\text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \land \neg \text{alloc}(x_i^\top)) \\
\text{init}_X & \triangleq \land_{j \in X} \text{init}_j \quad \text{(with } X \subseteq [1, n]) \\
\text{ok}_X & \triangleq \land_{j \in X} \text{ok}_j \quad \text{(with } X \subseteq [1, n]).
\end{align*}
\]

The map \( \text{tr} \) defined below is homomorphic for the Boolean connectives \( \land \) and \( \lor \) and satisfies the following clauses [COY01]:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{tr}(p_i) & \triangleq \text{alloc}(x_i^\top) \\
\text{tr}(\neg p_i) & \triangleq \text{alloc}(x_i^\bot) \\
\text{tr}(\forall p_i \varphi_{i+1}) & \triangleq (\text{ok}_i \land \text{init}_{[1, n] \setminus \{i\}}) \rightarrow \text{tr}(\varphi_{i+1}) \\
\text{tr}(\exists p_i \varphi_{i+1}) & \triangleq \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1, i-1]} \land \text{init}_{[i, n]}) \land \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1, i]} \land \text{init}_{[i+1, n]}) \land \text{tr}(\varphi_{i+1}))).
\end{align*}
\]

with \( \sim \psi \triangleq \psi \rightarrow \bot \). Whereas the encoding of the propositional quantification \( \forall p_i \) is rather natural with the help of the separating implication that performs a universal quantification too, the encoding of \( \exists p_i \) with a double use of \( \sim \) is not immediate and reflects the beauty of the solution given in [COY01].

The translation \( \text{tr} \) takes advantage of the formulae of the form \( \sim \psi \). Below, we present properties that will be helpful in the sequel. Their proof are left as Exercise 2.1 First, we define the relation \( \approx_j \) (this slightly different from the one in
CHAPTER 2. PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

the previous PSPACE-hardness proof. Given a memory state \((s, h)\) and a propositional valuation \(v\), we write \((s, h) \approx_j v\) where the properties below are verified.

- For all \(x\) and \(y\) in \(\{x^<_i, x^>_i : i \in [1, n]\}\), we have \(s(x) \neq s(y)\) (this only depends on \(s\)).
- For all \(i \in [j, n]\), we have \(\{s(x^>_i), s(x^<_i)\} \cap \text{dom}(h) = \emptyset\) (this only depends on the memory state).
- For all \(i \in [1, j-1]\), we have \((s(x^<_i)) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and \(s(x^>_i) \notin \text{dom}(h)\) and \(v(p_i) = \top\) or \((s(x^<_i)) \notin \text{dom}(h)\) and \(s(x^>_i) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and \(v(p_i) = \bot\).

Consequently, \((s, h) \approx_j v\) for some \(v\) implies \((s, h) \models \text{ok}_{[1,j-1]} \land \text{init}_{[j,n]}\).

Below, we state essential properties about \(\sim\).

**Lemma 2.1.4.** Let \((s, h)\) be a memory state and \(\varphi, \psi\) be formulae in \(\kSL_0\).

1. \((s, h) \models \sim (\varphi \land \psi)\) iff for all heaps \(h'\) disjoint from \(h\), if \((s, h') \models \varphi\), then \((s, h') \not\models \psi\).
2. \((s, h) \models \sim (\varphi \land \sim \psi)\) iff for all heaps \(h'\) disjoint from \(h\), if \((s, h') \models \varphi\), then there is a heap \(h''\) disjoint from \(h'\) such that \((s, h'') \models \psi\).
3. Suppose that \((s, h) \approx_i v\) for some \(v\). Then, \((s, h) \models \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1,i-1]} \land \text{init}_{[i,n]}) \land \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1,i]} \land \text{init}_{[i+1,n]} \land \varphi))\) iff there is \(h'\) such that \(h \subseteq h'\), \((s, h') \approx_{i+1} v'\) for some \(v'\) and \((s, h') \models \varphi\).

Correctness of the translation is stated below.

**Lemma 2.1.5.** The formula \(Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi\) is QBF satisfiable iff

\[
\mathcal{X} \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\bigwedge_{x \neq y \in \{x^<_i, x^>_i : i \in [1,n]\}} x \neq y \land \neg \text{alloc}(x)) \land \text{tr}(Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi)
\]

is \(1\SL_0\) satisfiable.

**Proof.** For every \(j \in [1, n+1]\), we write \(\varphi_j\) to denote the formula \(Q_j p_j \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi\).

By induction on \(j\), we show that for all \(j \in [1, n+1]\), if \((s, h) \approx_j v\), then \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi_j)\) iff \(v \models \varphi_j\). The base case in the induction corresponds to \(j = n + 1\) and therefore the induction step goes backwards.
Before providing the proof by induction, let us check that this is sufficient to establish the statement in the lemma. If \((s, h) \approx_1 v\), then \((s, h)\) satisfies

\[
\bigwedge_{x \neq y \in \{x_i^j : i \in [1, n]\}} x \neq y \land \neg \text{alloc}(x).
\]

Suppose that \(v \models Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \varphi\). Let us consider the memory state \((s, h)\) such that: for all \(i \in [1, n]\), we have \(s(x_i^j) = 2i\), \(s(x_i^+) = 2i + 1\) and \(\text{dom}(h) = \emptyset\). Obviously, \((s, h) \approx_1 v\) and therefore by the property above, we get \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi_1)\), that is \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi)\). Consequently, \((s, h) \models \chi\). Now suppose that \((s, h) \models \chi\). Let us take any propositional valuation \(v\). We have \((s, h) \approx_1 v\) and therefore by the property above, we get \(v \models \varphi_1\), that is \(v \models \varphi\).

Now let us consider the proof of the above property.

**Base case:** \(j = n + 1\).

So, \(\varphi_j = \varphi_{n+1} = \varphi\). The proof is by structural induction but the cases in the induction step with \(\land\) and \(\lor\) are by an easy verification. We assume that \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\) and let us consider \(p_i\) with \(i < n + 1\). If \(v \models p_i\), then \(v(p_i) = \top\) and since \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\), we get \(s(x_i^j) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and \((s, h) \models \text{alloc}(x_i^j) (= \text{tr}(p_i))\). If \(v \models \neg p_i\), then \(v(p_i) = \bot\) and since \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\), we get \(s(x_i^j) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and \((s, h) \models \text{alloc}(x_i^j) (= \text{tr}(\neg p_i))\). Conversely, if \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(p_i)\), then \(s(x_i^j) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and since \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\) we get \(v(p_i) = \top\), whence \(v \models p_i\). Similarly, if \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\neg p_i)\), then \(s(x_i^j) \in \text{dom}(h)\) and since \((s, h) \approx_{n+1} v\) we get \(v(p_i) = \bot\), whence \(v \models \neg p_i\).

For the induction step with \(j < n + 1\), below we deal with the case \(\varphi_j = \exists p_j \varphi_{j+1}\). The case \(\varphi_j = \forall p_j \varphi_{j+1}\) is omitted and it is left as Exercise 2.2.

We assume that \((s, h) \approx_j v\).

First suppose that \(v \models \exists p_j \varphi_{j+1}\). This means that there is \(b \in \{\top, \bot\}\) such that \(v[p_j \mapsto b] \models \varphi_{j+1}\). Let \(b'\) be such that \(\text{dom}(b') = \{s(x_i^j)\}\) and \(b'(s(x_i^j)) = 0\) (arbitrary value). Since \((s, h) \approx_j v\), we obtain \((s, h \uplus b') \approx_{j+1} v[p_j \mapsto \bot]\) and therefore by the induction hypothesis, we have \((s, h \uplus b') \models \text{tr}(\varphi_{j+1})\). By Lemma 2.1.4(III), \((s, h) \models ((\text{ok}_{[1, j-1]} \land \text{init}_{[j, n]}) \land \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1, j]} \land \text{init}_{[j+1, n]}) \land \text{tr}(\varphi_{j+1})))\) and therefore \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi_j)\).

Now suppose that \((s, h) \models \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1, j-1]} \land \text{init}_{[j, n]}) \land \sim ((\text{ok}_{[1, j]} \land \text{init}_{[j+1, n]}) \land \text{tr}(\varphi_{j+1})))\) and therefore \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi_j)\). By Lemma 2.1.4(III), there is \(b \subseteq b'\) such that \((s, b') \approx_{j+1} v'\) for some \(v'\) and \((s, b') \models \text{tr}(\varphi_{j+1})\). Note that \(v\) and \(v'\) agree on the atomic propositions \(p_i\) with \(i \in [1, j - 1]\). By the induction hypothesis, we have \(v' \models \varphi_{j+1}\) and therefore \(v \models \exists p_j \varphi_{j+1}\). QED
CHAPTER 2. PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

Corollary 2.1.6. [COY01] For every $k \geq 1$, the satisfiability and model-checking problems for $kSLO$ restricted to formulae obeying the grammar below

$$\varphi ::= \neg(x = y) \mid \text{alloc}(x) \mid \neg\text{alloc}(x) \mid \varphi \lor \varphi \mid \varphi \land \varphi \mid \varphi \to \varphi$$

(with $x, y$ in PVAR) is PSPACE-hard.

Note that $\bot$ can be defined as $\text{alloc}(x) \land \neg\text{alloc}(x)$ for some program variable $x$. In the above-mentioned fragment, it is remarkable that negation appears only in front of atomic formulae (to be compared with the formulae involved in Lemma 2.1.2) and the separating conjunction is banished. The proof of Corollary 2.1.6 is similar to the proof of Corollary 2.1.3 and it is left as Exercise 2.3.

2.1.2 Boolean formulae for propositional separation logics

In this section, we present a characterisation of the expressive power of propositional separation logic 1SLO, and a similar analysis can be done for any $kSLO$ with $k > 1$.

Theorem 2.1.7. [Loz04a, Chapter 5] Any formula $\varphi$ in 1SLO built over the program variables in $\{x_1, \ldots, x_q\}$ is logically equivalent to a Boolean combination of atomic formulae among size $\geq k$, $\text{alloc}(x_i)$, $x_i \mapsto x_j$ and $x_i = x_j$ ($k \in \mathbb{N}$, $i, j \in \{1, \ldots, q\}$).

The formulae of the form size $\geq k$ and $\text{alloc}(x_i)$ are introduced in Section 1.2.2 and we recall that $\text{alloc}(x_i)$ holds when $s(x_i)$ belongs to the heap domain and size $\geq k$ holds when the cardinal of the heap domain is at least $k$. By way of example ($\neg\text{emp} \ast (x_1 \mapsto x_2 \land \bot$) is equivalent to size $\geq 2 \land \text{alloc}(x_1)$. Furthermore, the cardinal of the heap domain without the interpretation of $x_1$ and $x_2$ (in the case it belongs to the domain) is at least $k \geq 0$, can be expressed as follows:

$$(\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \text{alloc}(x_2) \land \text{size} \geq k + 2) \lor$$

$$(((\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \neg\text{alloc}(x_2)) \lor (\neg\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \text{alloc}(x_2))) \land \text{size} \geq k + 1) \lor$$

$$\neg\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \neg\text{alloc}(x_2) \land \text{size} \geq k).$$

It is clear that such a formula can be generalised to any finite set of program variables. We write $\text{size}_\pi \geq k$ to denote the atomic formula such that $(s, b) \models \text{size}_\pi \geq k$ iff $\text{card} \left( \text{dom}(b) \setminus \{s(x_i) : i \in [1, q]\} \right) \geq k$. The formula size $\geq k$ can be expressed as follows:

$$(x_1 \neq x_2 \land \text{alloc}(x_1) \land \text{alloc}(x_2) \land \text{size}_\pi \geq k - 2) \lor$$

$$((\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \neg\text{alloc}(x_2)) \lor (\neg\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \text{alloc}(x_2))) \land \text{size} \geq k + 1) \lor$$

$$\neg\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \neg\text{alloc}(x_2) \land \text{size} \geq k).$$
2.1. PSPACE-COMPLETENESS AND EXPRESSIVE POWER

\[(x_1 = x_2 \land \text{alloc}(x_1) \land \text{size}_\alpha \geq k - 1) \lor \]
\[((\text{alloc}(x_1) \land \neg \text{alloc}(x_2)) \lor (\neg \text{alloc}(x_1) \land \text{alloc}(x_2))) \land \text{size}_\alpha \geq k - 1) \lor \]
\[(\neg \text{alloc}(x_1) \land \neg \text{alloc}(x_2) \land \text{size}_\alpha \geq k).\]

Such a formula can be generalised to any \(q \geq 1\). So using atomic formulae of the form \(\text{size} \geq k\) or \(\text{size}^q \geq k\) does not make a substantial difference in terms of expressive power.

Even though Theorem 2.1.7 provides a nice characterisation of the expressive power for 1SL0, several features limit its application. First, Theorem 2.1.7 only deals with the propositional case but we know that this is close to the best we can hope for. Indeed, a similar result is established in [DGLWM14] for 1SL1 by enriching the set of atomic formulae and by polishing and extending material from [Loz04a, BDL09] but the extension to 1SL2 is not possible (see developments in Chapter 3). Moreover, neither Theorem 2.1.7 states how to compute the equivalent formula nor it provides a precise information about the maximal bound \(k\) in atomic formulae \(\text{size} \geq k\) that are used to build a Boolean combination equivalent to \(\varphi\) in 1SL0 (see Corollary 5.3.12). Actually, one can restrict \(k\) to be at most polynomial in the size of \(\varphi\), assuming that formulae are encoded as finite trees (as opposed to a DAG encoding that would imply an exponential blow-up).

This entails a small model property in which the cardinal of the heap domain is bounded, see e.g. [COY01, CGH05] or Section 5.3. This feature is at the core of the translation into first-order logic (with empty signature) designed in [CGH05] and it regains the PSPACE upper bound for the satisfiability problem for 1SL0 (and for 2SL0 too), see e.g. [CGH05, Section 3.4].

Below, let us be a bit more precise about the way to prove Theorem 2.1.7 and to explain the main steps to show the PSPACE upper bound, which is reminiscent to many proofs showing PSPACE upper bound for modal logics by using Ladner-like algorithms, see e.g. [Lad77, Spa93, Dem03]. More details can be found in Section 5.3. Let \(q \geq 1\) and \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}\). We write \(\text{Test}'(q, \alpha)\) to denote the following set of atomic formulae:

\[\{x_i = x_j, x_i \hookrightarrow x_j, \text{alloc}(x_i): i, j \in [1, q]\} \cup \{\text{size}^q \geq \beta: \beta \in [0, \alpha]\}.\]

We define an equivalence relation \(\approx^q_\alpha\) on the class of memory states, so that two models are in the same equivalence class whenever they cannot be distinguished by any formula in \(\text{Test}'(q, \alpha)\): \((s, h) \approx^q_\alpha (s', h')\) iff

for all \(\psi \in \text{Test}'(q, \alpha)\), we have \((s, h) \models \psi\) iff \((s', h') \models \psi\).
CHAPTER 2. PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

One can show that for any formula $\varphi$ in $1SL_0$ with $q \geq 1$ program variables and with size $|\varphi|$ (for some reasonably succinct encoding), for any $\alpha \geq |\varphi|$, if $(s, b) \approx^q_\alpha (s', b')$, then $(s, b) \models \varphi$ if and only if $(s', b') \models \varphi$. This result or some of its variants established in [Loz04a, BDL09, DGLWM14] entails that for checking the satisfaction of $\varphi$ in some memory state, what matters is really the satisfaction of atomic formulae in $\approx^q_\alpha$. Theorem 2.1.7 is then a direct consequence of this property.

**Corollary 2.1.8.** [COY01, Yan01] Let $\varphi$ be a satisfiable formula in $1SL_0$ with $q$ program variables. Then there is memory state $(s, b)$ such that $(s, b) \models \varphi$ and $\text{ran}(s) \cup \text{dom}(b) \cup \text{ran}(b) \subseteq [0, q + |\varphi|]$.

PSPACE upper bound for $1SL_0$ can be pushed a bit further by allowing a unique quantified variable.

**Theorem 2.1.9.** [DGLWM14] The satisfiability problem for $1SL_1$ is PSPACE-complete.

PSPACE-hardness is inherited from the PSPACE-hardness of $1SL_0$ whereas the PSPACE upper bound requires an adequate abstraction. It is open whether $1SL_1$ extended with reachability predicates can lead to decidable extensions (which would capture some version of separation logic considered in [TBR14]).

2.2 NP and PTIME Fragments

Even though performing reasoning in propositional logic $kSL_0$ (with $k \geq 1$) can be computationally expensive, see above the PSPACE-completeness results for validity and satisfiability, fragments have been designed that are useful for automatic program analysis and hopefully less demanding computationally.

The fragment presented below, has been introduced in [BCO04] and shown decidable by providing a complete proof system. More importantly, the tool Smallfoot has been designed from it, see e.g. [BCO05], and decides the entailment problem for such a fragment, which allows to verify automatically numerous properties. Strangely enough, the precise computational complexity of the entailment problem for such a fragment is not considered in [BCO04] and it is only in [CHO+11, HIOP13] that this problem has been successfully solved.

Let $SF$ (‘Smallfoot fragment’) be the fragment of $1SL_2$ defined by the formula $\varphi_p$ below, where $\varphi_p$ defines **pure formulae** (see also Section 1.2.4 for the
introduction of pure formulae semantically) and \( \varphi_s \) defines spatial formulae:

\[
\varphi_p ::= \bot \mid \top \mid (x_i = x_j) \mid \neg(x_i = x_j) \mid \varphi_p \land \varphi_p
\]

\[
\varphi_s ::= \text{emp} \mid \top \mid x_i \rightarrow x_j \mid \text{sreach}(x_i, x_j) \mid \varphi_s \land \varphi_s \mid \varphi ::= \varphi_p \land \varphi_s
\]

where \( x_i, x_j \) are program variables from PVAR. As usually, the formulae are interpreted on memory states with one record field. Obviously, \( x_i \rightarrow x_j \) is interpreted as the exact points-to relation \((s, h) \models x_i \rightarrow x_j \iff \text{dom}(h) = s(x_i) \text{ and } h(s(x_i)) = s(x_j))\) whereas \((s, h) \models \text{sreach}(x_i, x_j)\) holds true iff the heap contains exactly a path from \( s(x_i) \) to \( s(x_j) \). As shown in Section 1.2.2, \( \text{sreach}(x_i, x_j) \) (and \( \text{reach}(x_i, x_j) \) too) can be specified in 1SL2.

We briefly recall that the entailment problem for SF takes as input two SF formulae \( \varphi \) and \( \psi \), and asks whether \( \varphi \models \psi \). Note also that the rule for strengthening precedent (SP)

\[
\varphi \Rightarrow \psi \quad \{\psi\} \quad \text{C} \quad \{\psi\}
\]

involves entailment checking. This is a building block of the verification process and in particular, proof checking requires that entailment problem is decidable, if not tractable at all.

Whereas a \( \text{coNP} \) algorithm is provided in [BCO04], the optimal complexity is established in [CHO+11] by using an original approach: to represent formulae as graphs and to search for homomorphisms on these special graphs.

**Theorem 2.2.1.** [CHO+11 Theorems 16 & 24] (see also [GKO11 Section 4]) The entailment and satisfiability problems for SF can be solved in polynomial time.

Indeed, it is quite surprising that the entailment problem is computationally tractable. A slight extension may easily lead to intractability. For instance considering the variant clause \( \varphi ::= \varphi_p \land (\varphi_s \land \varphi'_s) \) (i.e., allowing a bit of conjunction) already leads to \( \text{coNP} \)-hardness [CHO+11]. The graph-based algorithm presented in [CHO+11] has been implemented and used for automatic verification, see [HIOP13].
2.3 Undecidable Propositional Separation Logics

2.3.1 A brief introduction to abstract separation logics

Concrete models for separation logic are memory states or heaps as defined earlier, but alternative models exist, for instance heaps with permissions, see e.g. [BCOP05, BK14]. It is also possible to introduce more abstract models with a partial operator for gluing together models that are separate in some sense. We have already seen such abstract models in Section 1.3.1 when BBI-models have been introduced. This is precisely the approach introduced in [COY07] and investigated in great length in subsequent papers, see e.g. [BK10, LWG10, BV14, HCGT14]. After all, such an abstraction should not come as a surprise since separation logic is understood as an assertion language in a Hoare-style framework that interprets Boolean BI in concrete heaps (see Section 1.3.1). Moreover, sometimes, problems can be easily solved on abstract models because more freedom is allowed (see e.g. [BV14, HCGT14] or Theorem 1.3.5).

The structure \((\mathcal{H}_k, \cup, \mathcal{U}_k)\) satisfies the following properties.

\(\text{(MON)}\) \(\cup\) is a partial binary operation \(\cup : \mathcal{H}_k \times \mathcal{H}_k \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_k\) and \(\mathcal{U}_k \subseteq \mathcal{H}_k\),

\(\text{(AC)}\) \(\cup\) is associative and commutative,

\(\text{(CAN)}\) \(\cup\) is cancellative, i.e. if \((s, h) \cup (s', h')\) is defined and \((s, h) \cup (s', h') = (s, h) \cup (s'', h'')\), then \((s', h') = (s'', h'')\).

\(\text{(U)}\) for all \((s, h) \in \mathcal{H}_k\), we have \(\{(s, h)\} = \{(s, h) \cup (s', h') : (s', h') \in \mathcal{U}_k, (s, h) \cup (s', h')\} is defined\).

A separation model defined below satisfies the above properties for the structure \((\mathcal{H}_k, \cup, \mathcal{U}_k)\) by abstracting the essential features and can be viewed as a Kripke frame for a multi-dimensional modal logic with binary modalities, see e.g. [MV97, HCGT14]. A separation model is a cancellative partial commutative monoid \((M, \circ, U)\), i.e.

\(\text{(MON)}\) \(M\) is a non-empty set, \(\circ\) is a partial binary operation \(\circ : M \times M \rightarrow M\) and \(U \subseteq M\),

\(\text{(AC)}\) \(\circ\) is associative and commutative,

\(\text{(CAN)}\) \(\circ\) is cancellative, i.e. if \(m \circ m'\) is defined and \(m \circ m' = m \circ m''\), then \(m' = m''\).
2.3. UNDECIDABLE PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

(U) For all $m \in M$, we have $m \circ U = \{m\}$ where $m \circ U \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{m \circ u : u \in U, m \circ u \text{ is defined}\}$.

Obviously $(\mathfrak{S} \Xi_k, \cup, U_k)$ is a separation model but other memory models can be found in the literature, see e.g. [BK10] for many more examples. For instance, the **RAM-domain model** $(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \cup, \{\emptyset\})$ is a separation model where $\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N})$ is the set of finite subsets of $\mathbb{N}$ and $X_1 \cup X_2$ is defined only if $X_1 \cap X_2 = \emptyset$ and then $X_1 \cup X_2 \overset{\text{def}}{=} X_1 \cup X_2$ (disjoint union). This corresponds to the separation model $(\mathfrak{S} \Xi_k, \cup, U_k)$ with $k$ equal to zero.

Given a countably infinite set $\text{PROP} = \{p_1, p_2, \ldots\}$ of propositional variables, a valuation $\mathfrak{V}$ is a map $\mathfrak{V} : \text{PROP} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(M)$. Semantical structures of the separation model $(M, \circ, U)$ are understood as the separation model itself augmented by a valuation. Hence, the separation logic defined from the separation model $(M, \circ, U)$ has models that can be understood as Kripke models with underlying ternary relation induced by the operation $\circ$ and the interpretation of propositional variables done via $\mathfrak{V}$. The set of formulae is then defined as follows:

$$\varphi, \psi ::= \text{emp} \mid p \mid \varphi \land \psi \mid \neg \varphi \mid \varphi \ast \psi \mid \varphi \rightarrow \psi.$$  

Let $m \in M$ and $\mathfrak{V} : \text{PROP} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(M)$ be a valuation, the satisfaction relation $\models$ is defined as follows (we omit the obvious clauses for Boolean connectives).

- $m \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \text{emp}$ iff $m \in U$ (we keep the constant $\text{emp}$ in the abstract setting but elements of $U$ should be understood as units).
- $m \models_{\mathfrak{V}} p$ iff $m \in \mathfrak{V}(p)$.
- $m \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi_1 \ast \varphi_2$ iff for some $m_1, m_2 \in M$, we have $m = m_1 \circ m_2$, $m_1 \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi_1$ and $m_2 \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi_2$.
- $m \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi_1 \rightarrow \varphi_2$ iff for all $m' \in M$ such that $m \circ m'$ is defined, if $m' \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi_1$ then $m \circ m' \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi_2$.

In the above definition for the satisfaction relation, the model $(M, \circ, U)$ is implicit but we also sometimes use the notation $(M, \circ, U), m \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi$ to emphasise the separation model in use. The satisfaction relation on BBI-models is clearly defined following the same schema (see Section 1.3.1).

A formula $\varphi$ is **valid** in the separation model $(M, \circ, U) \overset{\text{def}}{\iff}$ for all $m \in M$ and for all valuations $\mathfrak{V}$, we have $m \models_{\mathfrak{V}} \varphi$. Similarly, a formula $\varphi$ is **satisfiable** in the separation model $(M, \circ, U) \overset{\text{def}}{\iff}$ there exist $m \in M$ and a valuation $\mathfrak{V}$ such
that \( m \models \varphi \). We write \( SL(M, \circ, U) \) to denote the propositional separation logic defined from the separation model \( (M, \circ, U) \) with propositional variables. When \( C \) is a class of separation models, we can also define the propositional separation logic \( SL(C) \) by admitting a family of separation models instead of a single model. Satisfiability and validity problems are defined accordingly. For instance, \( \varphi \) is satisfiable for \( SL(C) \) iff there exist \( (M, \circ, U) \) in \( C \), \( m \in M \) and a valuation \( \mathcal{V} \) such that \( (M, \circ, U), m \models \mathcal{V} \varphi \).

The satisfiability problem for \( kSL0 \) (i.e. \( kSL \) without any first-order quantification) can be reformulated as the satisfiability problem in the separation model \( (\mathcal{S} \circ_k, \forall, U_k) \) in which propositional variables are of the form \( x_i \leftrightarrow x_j \) or \( x_i = x_j \) and the valuations \( \mathcal{V} \) are constrained in such a way that \( (s, h) \in \mathcal{V}(x_i \leftrightarrow x_j) \) iff \( h(s(x_i)) = h(s(x_j)) \). Similarly, we require that \( (s, h) \in \mathcal{V}(x_i = x_j) \) iff \( s(x_i) = s(x_j) \). Of course, this reformulation assumes that atomic formulae have some structure and it also requires restricting the set of valuations. The set of valuations can be restricted in many other ways, for instance by imposing that a propositional variable holds true only for a finite number of elements of \( M \) (see such restrictions in [BK10]).

2.3.2 Encoding runs of Minsky machines

Whereas the satisfiability problem for any propositional fragment \( kSL0 \) is decidable and indeed \( \text{PSPACE} \)-complete (see Section 2.1), propositional versions of abstract separation logic with propositional variables are easily shown undecidable.

Theorem 2.3.1.  
\[ [BK10, LWG10] \text{The satisfiability problems for } SL(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \forall, \{\emptyset\}) \text{ and for } SL(\mathcal{S} \circ_k, \forall, U_k) – k \geq 1 – \text{ are undecidable.} \]

Actually, results in [BK10, LWG10] are much more general. Herein, we limit ourselves to two separation models that are obviously related to concrete heaps. Below, by way of example, we provide the undecidability proof for the logic \( SL(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \forall, \{\emptyset\}) \) by simple semantical arguments (and without using any proof-theoretical arguments, unlike what is done in [BK10, LWG10]).

Before presenting the undecidability proof, let us mention the equivalence of the statements below:

1. \( \varphi \) is valid in \( SL(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \forall, \{\emptyset\}) \).
2.3. UNDECIDABLE PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

2. \( \neg \varphi \) is not satisfiable in \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \mathcal{U}, \{\emptyset\}) \).

3. \( \neg \varphi \) is not satisfiable in \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{H} \mathcal{S}_k, \mathcal{U}) \) (for any \( k \geq 1 \)).

4. \( \varphi \) is valid in \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{H} \mathcal{S}_k, \mathcal{U}) \) (for any \( k \geq 1 \)).

Whereas the equivalences between instances for validity and satisfiability are standard (thanks to negation in the logical language), the equivalences related to distinct separation models are simply due to the fact, in such logics, composition of heaps only requires that the domain are disjoint, independently of the range of the heaps. Note also that \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \mathcal{U}, \{\emptyset\}) \) can be understood as the logic \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{H} \mathcal{S}_k, \mathcal{U}) \) with \( k \) equal to zero.

Let \( M \) be a Minsky machine with \( \alpha \geq 1 \) instructions, 1 is the initial instruction and \( \alpha \) is the halting instruction \([\text{Min}67]\). Machine \( M \) has two counters \( c_1 \) and \( c_2 \) and the instructions are of the following types (\( j \in [1, 2] \), \( I \in [1, \alpha - 1] \), \( J, J_1, J_2 \in [1, \alpha] \)):

1. \( I \): \( c_j := c_j + 1 \); goto \( J \).

2. \( I \): if \( c_j = 0 \) then goto \( J_1 \) else (\( c_j := c_j - 1 \); goto \( J_2 \)).

3. \( \alpha \): halt.

Machine \( M \) halts if there is a run of the form \((I_0, c_1^0, c_2^0), (I_1, c_1^1, c_2^1), \ldots, (I_L, c_1^L, c_2^L)\) such that \((I_i, c_1^i, c_2^i) \in [1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N}^2 \) (\( i \in [1, L] \)), the succession of configurations respects the instructions (in the obvious way), \( I_0 = 1 \), \( I_L = \alpha \), and \( c_1^0 = c_2^0 = 0 \). The halting problem consists in checking whether a machine halts and it is known to be undecidable, see e.g. \([\text{Min}67]\). Indeed, Minsky machines are Turing-complete.

By way of example, the Minsky machine

1: \( c_1 := c_1 + 1 \); goto 2.

2: \( c_2 := c_2 + 1 \); goto 1.

3: halt.

has a unique computation

\[(1, 0, 0) \rightarrow (2, 1, 0) \rightarrow (1, 1, 1) \rightarrow (2, 2, 1) \rightarrow (1, 2, 2) \rightarrow (2, 3, 2) \ldots\]

We build a formula \( \varphi_M \) such that \( M \) halts iff \( \varphi_M \) is valid in \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \mathcal{U}, \{\emptyset\}) \), which entails the undecidability of the satisfiability problem for \( \text{SL}(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \mathcal{U}, \{\emptyset\}) \).
The formula $\varphi_M$ is built over the propositional variables $q$, $q'$, $p_1$ and $p_2$. Given a valuation $\mathcal{B}$, a configuration $(I, c_1, c_2)$ of $M$ is encoded by some set $X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N})$ such that

- $X \in \mathcal{B}(q')$ (meaning $X$ encodes a configuration),
- $X = X_0 \uplus X_1 \uplus X_2$ ($X$ can be decomposed so that there are disjoint parts about the instruction counter, the first counter and the second counter),
- $\text{card}(X_0) = I$, $\text{card}(X_1) = c_1$ and $\text{card}(X_2) = c_2$.
- for all $\emptyset \neq Y \subseteq X_0$, $Y \in \mathcal{B}(q) \setminus (\mathcal{B}(p_1) \cup \mathcal{B}(p_2))$,
- for all $\emptyset \neq Y \subseteq X_1$, $Y \in \mathcal{B}(p_1) \setminus (\mathcal{B}(p_2) \cup \mathcal{B}(q))$,
- for all $\emptyset \neq Y \subseteq X_2$, $Y \in \mathcal{B}(p_2) \setminus (\mathcal{B}(p_1) \cup \mathcal{B}(q))$.

In that case, we write $X \approx_{\mathcal{B}} (I, c_1, c_2)$. The basic idea is that the atomic proposition $p_i$ identifies the sets that contribute to the value for the counter $c_i$ whereas the atomic proposition $q$ identifies the sets that contribute to the value of the instruction counter. Furthermore, we require more than that:

1. $X \in \mathcal{B}(p)$ implies that none of the strict non-empty subsets of $X$ belongs to $\mathcal{B}(p')$ with $p' \neq p$ and all its strict non-empty subsets belongs to $\mathcal{B}(p)$.
2. The empty set is the only one satisfying both $p_1$ and $p_2$, which should not come as a surprise since both counters can take the zero value.

Figure 2.1 illustrates how the configuration $(4, 3, 2)$ can be encoded as a set with the corresponding valuation.

The formula $\varphi_M$ has the following form:

$$(\text{emp} \land p_1 \land p_2 \land \neg q \land \neg q') \land \text{closure} \Rightarrow (\top \leftarrow (q' \land (p_1 \ast p_2 \ast \text{size} = \alpha \land q))))$$
2.3. UNDECIDABLE PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

The formula closure guarantees that for any configuration \((I, c_1, c_2)\) reachable from the initial configuration \((1, 0, 0)\), there is some \(X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N})\) such that \(X \equiv_{\mathcal{B}} (I, c_1, c_2)\) (in that case, note that \(\text{card}(X) = I + c_1 + c_2\)).

The formula \(\top \iff (p_1 \land p_2 \land \text{size} = \alpha \land q)\) states that there is \(X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N})\) such that \(X = X_0 \cup X_1 \cup X_2\), \(\text{card}(X_0) = \alpha\), \(X_1\) encodes the first counter and \(X_2\) encodes the second counter.

In order to define the formula closure, we introduce the universal modalities \(\langle U \rangle\) and \([U]\). Let \(\langle U \rangle \psi\) be an abbreviation for \(\top \iff \psi\) and \([U] \psi\) be an abbreviation for \(\top \iff \psi\), following an obvious analogy with the universal modality in Kripke models, see e.g. [GP92, Hem96]. The formula closure is defined as the conjunction of the following formulae:

- \(\langle U \rangle \text{(size} = 1 \land q \land q')\). There is some set \(X\) encoding the configuration \((1, 0, 0)\).
- \([U] (p_1 \Rightarrow (\neg((\neg p_1 \land \neg \text{emp}) \land \top) \land (\neg \text{emp} \Rightarrow \neg p_2) \land \neg q \land \neg q')\).
- \([U] (p_2 \Rightarrow (\neg((\neg p_2 \land \neg \text{emp}) \land \top) \land (\neg \text{emp} \Rightarrow \neg p_1) \land \neg q \land \neg q'))\).
- \([U] (q \Rightarrow (\neg((\neg q \land \neg \text{emp}) \land \top)) \land \neg p_1 \land \neg p_2)\).

In the sequel, the modalities \(\langle U \rangle\) and \([U]\) are used at the outermost level only and therefore they are evaluated only on the empty set. More generally, the universal modality \([U]\) can be defined \([U] \phi \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\text{emp} \land (\top \iff \phi)) \land \top\) (see also Exercise 1.13). Consequently, whenever \(X \models_{\mathcal{B}} (q \land \text{size} = I) \land p_1 \land p_2\) for some \(I \in [1, \alpha]\), there is no \(I' \neq I\) such that \(X \models_{\mathcal{B}} (q \land \text{size} = I') \land p_1 \land p_2\). Moreover, there are unique \(X_0, X_1\) and \(X_2\) such that \(X = X_0 \cup X_1 \cup X_2\), \(X_0 \models_{\mathcal{B}} (q \land \text{size} = I)\), \(X_1 \models_{\mathcal{B}} p_1\) and \(X_2 \models_{\mathcal{B}} p_2\). We add to closure the following formulae:

- For all instructions of the form \(I: c_1 := c_1 + 1; \text{goto} J\), we consider
  \[\langle U \rangle (((q \land \text{size} = I) \land p_1 \land p_2) \land q') \Rightarrow (q \land \text{size} = I) \land (((q \land \text{size} = J) \land (\text{size} = 1 \land p_1)) \iff (((q \land \text{size} = J) \land p_1 \land p_2) \land q'))\]

- Formulae for instructions of the form \(I: c_2 := c_2 + 1; \text{goto} J\) are defined similarly.
Lemma 2.3.2. Let \( \alpha \) be a valuation such that \( \emptyset \models_\alpha (\text{emp} \land p_1 \land p_2 \land \neg q \land \neg q') \land \text{closure} \) and \( X \approx_\alpha (I, c_1, c_2) \). If \( (I, c_1, c_2) \rightarrow (I', c'_1, c'_2) \) in \( \mathcal{M} \), then there is a finite subset \( X' \) of \( \mathbb{N} \) such that \( X' \approx_\alpha (I', c'_1, c'_2) \).

The proof of Lemma 2.3.2 is left as Exercise 2.9. Consequently, if \( \emptyset \models_\alpha (\text{emp} \land p_1 \land p_2 \land \neg q \land \neg q') \land \text{closure} \), then all the reachable configurations from \((1,0,0)\) have an encoding by a set in the separation model.

The correctness proof works as follows. Suppose that the machine \( \mathcal{M} \) halts. This means that for any valuation \( \mathcal{V} \), if \( \emptyset \models_\mathcal{V} (\text{emp} \land p_1 \land p_2 \land \neg q \land \neg q') \land \text{closure} \), then by Lemma 2.3.2 there is some \( X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}) \) such that \( X \approx_\mathcal{V} (\alpha, c_1, c_2) \) for some \( c_1, c_2 \in \mathbb{N} \), i.e. there is some \( X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}) \) such that \( X \models_\mathcal{V} (p_1 \land p_2 \land \text{size} = \alpha \lor q) \land q' \), which is equivalent to \( \emptyset \models_\mathcal{V} (\top \land (p_1 \land p_2 \land \text{size} = \alpha \land q)) \land q' \). Now suppose that the machine \( \mathcal{M} \) does not halt, this means that there is no configuration of the form \((\alpha, c_1, c_2)\) reachable from the initial configuration \((1,0,0)\). Let us define the following valuation \( \mathcal{V}_0 \):

- \( \mathcal{V}_0(q) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}([1, \alpha - 1]) \setminus \{\emptyset\} \).
- \( \mathcal{V}_0(p_1) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\{\alpha + 2k + 1 : k \in \mathbb{N}\}) \), \( \mathcal{V}_0(p_2) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\{\alpha + 2k : k \in \mathbb{N}\}) \). So, \( X \in \mathcal{V}_0(p_1) \) and \( X' \in \mathcal{V}_0(p_2) \) imply that \( X \cap X' = \emptyset \).
- \( \mathcal{V}_0(q') \) is equal to the set below:

\[
{X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}) : (I, c_1, c_2) \text{ reachable from } (1,0,0)} , X = X_0 \cup X_1 \cup X_2 , \text{card}(X_0) = I , X_0 \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}([1, \alpha - 1]) , \text{card}(X_1) = c_1 , X_1 \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\{\alpha + 2k + 1 : k \in \mathbb{N}\}) , \text{card}(X_2) = c_2 , X_2 \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\{\alpha + 2k : k \in \mathbb{N}\}) .
\]
One can check that

1. for every configuration \((I, c_1, c_2)\), we have \((I, c_1, c_2)\) is reachable from \((1, 0, 0)\) iff there is \(X\) such that \(X \approx_{\mathcal{B}_0} (I, c_1, c_2)\).
2. \(\emptyset \models_{\mathcal{B}_0} (\mathsf{emp} \land p_1 \land p_2 \land \neg q \land \neg q') \land \text{closure},\)
3. there is no \(X \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N})\) such that \(X \models_{\mathcal{B}_0} (p_1 \ast p_2 \ast (\text{size} = \alpha \land q)) \land q'.\)

Consequently, \(\varphi_{\mathbb{B}}\) is not valid in \(\text{SL}(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \cup, \{\emptyset\})\). This concludes the proof of Theorem 2.3.1. It is worth noting that this undecidability proof uses only semantical arguments.

### 2.4 Exercises

**Exercise 2.1.** Prove Lemma 2.1.4.

**Exercise 2.2.** Complete the proof of 2.1.5 with the case \(\varphi_j = \exists p_j \varphi_{j+1}\) in the induction step.

**Exercise 2.3.** Prove Corollary 2.1.6.

**Exercise 2.4.** [COY01, Section 5] Let \(\mathcal{L}\) be the fragment of 1SL0 defined by the grammar below:

\[
\varphi, \psi ::= \mathsf{alloc}(x) \mid \neg \mathsf{alloc}(x) \mid \mathsf{emp} \mid \neg \mathsf{emp} \mid x \leftrightarrow y \mid \neg(x \leftrightarrow y) \mid x \mapsto y \mid \\
\neg(x \mapsto y) \mid x = y \mid \neg(x = y) \mid \top \mid \bot \mid \varphi \lor \psi \mid \varphi \land \psi \mid \varphi \ast \psi
\]

where \(x, y \in \mathsf{PVAR}\).

a) Explain why the satisfiability problem for \(\mathcal{L}\) is NP-hard.

b) Given a propositional formula \(\varphi\) built over atomic propositions in \(\{p_1, \ldots, p_n\}\) in which negation occurs only in front of atomic propositions, we write \(\text{tr}(\varphi)\) to denote the formula in \(\mathcal{L}\) obtained from \(\varphi\) by substituting every occurrence of \(p_i\) by the atomic formula \(\mathsf{alloc}(x_i)\). We define the memory state \((s, h)\) such that for all \(i \in [1, n]\), we have \(s(x_i) \overset{\text{def}}{=} i\) and \(h(i) \overset{\text{def}}{=} i\). Show that \((s, h) \models \text{tr}(\varphi) \ast \top\) iff \(\varphi\) is satisfiable. Conclude that the model-checking problem for \(\mathcal{L}\) is NP-hard.

c) By using Corollary 2.1.8, show that if \(\varphi\) in \(\mathcal{L}\) is satisfiable, then \(\varphi\) holds true on a memory state \((s, h)\) with \(\text{ran}(s) \cup \text{dom}(h) \cup \text{ran}(h) \subseteq [0, p(|\varphi|)]\) for some polynomial \(p(\cdot)\).
CHAPTER 2. PROPOSITIONAL SEPARATION LOGICS

d) Given a memory state \((s, h)\) and a formula \(\varphi\) in \(\mathcal{L}\), define a witness of polynomial size so that checking whether the witness guarantees that \((s, h) \models \varphi\) can be done in polynomial time. Conclude that the model-checking problem for \(\mathcal{L}\) is NP-complete.

e) Explain why the satisfiability problem for \(\mathcal{L}\) is NP-complete.

Exercise 2.5. By using Theorem 2.1.7 show that there is no formula in 1SL0 equivalent to the formula \(\exists u (x_1 \leftrightarrow u) \land (u \leftrightarrow x_2)\).

Exercise 2.6. Prove that for all memory states \((s, h)\), we have \((s, h) \models (\neg \text{emp} \ast (x_1 \leftrightarrow x_2 \rightarrow \bot))\) iff \((s, h) \models \text{size} \geq 2 \land \text{alloc}(x_1)\).

Exercise 2.7. Show that the formula \(\varphi\) is valid in \(\text{SL}(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \emptyset, \{\emptyset\})\) iff \(\varphi\) is valid in \(\text{SL}(\mathcal{S}_{k}, \emptyset, \{\emptyset\}) \land k \geq 1\).

Exercise 2.8. Check that \((\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathbb{N}), \emptyset, \{\emptyset\})\) is a separation model.

Exercise 2.9. Prove Lemma 2.3.2
2.4. EXERCISES
Chapter 3

**EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS**

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Encoding Data Words in ISL2</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Encoding Arithmetical Constraints in ISL2</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Undecidability of ISL2</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1</td>
<td>Constraints between locations at distance three</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2</td>
<td>Reduction from the halting problem for Minsky machines</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Expressive Completeness</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1</td>
<td>Left and right parentheses</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2</td>
<td>The role of parentheses</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3</td>
<td>Taking care of valuations</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.4</td>
<td>A reduction from DSOL into 1SL2(−∗)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Bibliographical References on Expressiveness</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this chapter, we take care of the expressiveness of first-order separation logics; for the sake of simplicity, we consider fragments without program variables and therefore no need to consider stores in memory states (the models are restricted to heaps). It is worth recalling a few well-known results about expressive power of modal or temporal logics. For instance, linear-time temporal logic LTL
3.1 ENCODING DATA WORDS IN 1SL2

is known to be as expressive as first-order logic by Kamp’s Theorem \[\text{Kam68}\] (see also \[\text{HR05}, \text{Rab14}\]). More references about bibliographical references for expressiveness of non-classical logics can be found in Section 3.6.

Section 3.1 shows how data words can be encoded as heaps by using formulae in 1SL2. In Section 3.2, we explain how to encode arithmetical constraints comparing the numbers of predecessors of two locations within 1SL2. Details are provided when the two locations belong to a specific class of heaps. By using the formulae built so far, in Section 3.3 we show that the satisfiability problem for 1SL2 is undecidable by reduction from the halting problem for Minsky machines. In Section 3.4, we explain how formulae in 1DSOL (without program variables) can be translated into 1SL2(−∗) (without program variables) by respecting faithfully the semantics. A reduction with program variables or with \(k > 1\) record fields is possible but it is not presented in that section.

### Highlights of the chapter

1. Presentation of an encoding of data words as heaps that can be specified in 1SL2 (Section 3.1) \[\text{DD15b}\].

2. Undecidability proof of 1SL2 by reduction from the halting problem for Minsky machines (Theorem 3.3.7) \[\text{DD15b}\].

3. Proof that 1SL2(−∗) is as expressive as weak second-order logic (Theorem 3.4.14). We use first principles from \[\text{BDL12}\] and the encodings from \[\text{DD14}\].

### 3.1 Encoding Data Words in 1SL2

In this section, we present a simple encoding of data words with multiple attributes into heaps that will be useful in the rest of the chapter. Finite data words \[\text{Bou02}\] are ubiquitous structures that include timed words \[\text{AD94}\], runs of Minsky machines, and runs of concurrent programs with an unbounded number of processes. These are finite words in which every position carries a label from a finite alphabet and a finite tuple of data values from some infinite alphabet. A wealth of specification formalisms for data words (and slight variants) has been introduced stemming from automata (see e.g. \[\text{KF94}, \text{NSV04}, \text{BL10}, \text{Fig10}\]) to adequate logical languages such as first-order logic \[\text{BDM}^+ 11, \text{Dav09}, \text{SZ12}\] and temporal logics \[\text{Fig10}, \text{DHLT14}\].
A data word of dimension \( \beta \) is a finite non-empty sequence in \((\{1, \alpha\} \times \mathbb{N}^\beta)^+\) for some \( \alpha \geq 1 \) and \( \beta \geq 0 \). The set \([1, \alpha]\) is understood as a finite alphabet of cardinal \( \alpha \) whereas \( \mathbb{N} \) is the infinite data domain. Data words of dimension zero are simply finite words over a finite alphabet whereas data words of dimension one correspond to data words in the sense introduced in [Bou02]. Finite runs of Minsky machines (with two counters) can be viewed as data words of dimension two over the alphabet \([1, \alpha]\) assuming that the Minsky machine has \( \alpha \) distinct instructions (see Section 2.3.2). In full generality, the set \( \mathbb{N} \) could be replaced by any infinite data domain \( \mathcal{D} \) (for instance by \( \mathbb{R} \) to define timed words); however, we do not need to be so general, and in this chapter, we focus on the infinite domain \( \mathbb{N} \).

Let \( \text{dw} = (a_1, v_{11}^1, \ldots, v_{11}^\beta) \cdots (a_L, v_L^1, \ldots, v_L^\beta) \) be a data word in \((\{1, \alpha\} \times \mathbb{N}^\beta)^+\), i.e. \( \text{dw} \) is of dimension \( \beta \) and its underlying alphabet has cardinal \( \alpha \geq 1 \). The data word \( \text{dw} \) shall be encoded by the heap \( h_{\text{dw}} \) containing a path of the form below:

\[
1_0^1 \rightarrow 1_1^1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow 1_\beta^1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow 1_0^L \rightarrow 1_1^L \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow 1_\beta^L
\]

where

- for every \( i \in [1, L] \), \( 1_0^i \) has \( a_i^i + 2 \) predecessors,
- for all \( i \in [1, L] \) and all \( j \in [1, \beta] \), \( 1_j^i \) has \( v_j^i + \alpha + 3 \) predecessors,
- every location in the heap domain is either on that path or points to a location on that path.

Such a path from \( 1_0^1 \) to \( 1_\beta^L \) is called the main path, and \( h_{\text{dw}}(\beta^L - 1)(1_0^i) = 1_\beta^L \). Other simple encodings are possible (for instance without shifting the values from the finite alphabet or from the infinite domain) but the current one is well-suited for all the developments made in this chapter. In particular, the encoding allows us to know easily whether a location encodes a letter from the finite alphabet or an element from the infinite domain. Note also that \( h_{\text{bw}} \) is not uniquely specified, and we understand it modulo isomorphism, see Exercise 1.1.

Figure 3.1 presents the encoding of the data word \( \text{dw}_0 = (2, 1)(1, 2)(2, 2) \) of dimension 1 with \( \alpha = 2 \) with its representation of the heap \( h_{\text{dw}} \) in which the predecessors of the locations on the main path are provided schematically.

The heap \( h_{\text{bw}} \) looks like a fishbone. Let us make this precise. A heap \( h \) is a fishbone if

\[
(\text{fb1}) \; \text{dom}(h) \neq \emptyset,
\]
3.1. ENCODING DATA WORDS IN 1SL2

Figure 3.1: The heap for data word $dw_0 = (2, 1)(1, 2)(2, 2)$.

(fb2) there is a location reachable from all the locations of $\text{dom}(h)$ that is not in $\text{dom}(h)$, and

(fb3) there are no distinct locations $l_1, l_2, l_3, l_4, l_5$ such that $l_1 \rightarrow l_2 \rightarrow l_3 \leftarrow l_4 \leftarrow l_5$ in the heap $h$.

When $h$ is a fishbone, it has a tree-like structure (when looking at the edges backward), equipped with a root (the unique location from (fb2)), but additionally, one can recognise the locations on the main path as those locations with at least one predecessor. The existence of such a main path is guaranteed by (fb3). The first location on the main path satisfies the formula

$$\text{first}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u \geq 1) \land \neg(\#u^{-1} \geq 1)$$

and the last location on the main path satisfies precisely the formula

$$\text{last}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u \geq 1) \land \neg \text{alloc}(u)$$

Let $\varphi_{fb}$ be the formula below:

$$\neg \text{emp} \land (\exists u \neg \text{alloc}(u) \land (\forall \bar{u} \text{ alloc}(\bar{u}) \Rightarrow \text{reach}(\bar{u}, u))) \land$$
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

The formulae of the form $\#u - i \sim k$ and $\text{reach}(u, u)$ can be found in Section 1.2.2.

Lemma 3.1.1. Let $h$ be a heap. We have $h \models \varphi_{fb}$ iff $h$ is a fishbone.

The proof for Lemma 3.1.1 is by an easy verification. Now, let us refine the notion of a fishbone heap so that it takes into account constraints on numbers of predecessors. An $\alpha, \beta$-fishbone is a fishbone heap such that

(C1) the first location on the main path has a number of predecessors in $[3, \alpha + 1]$,

(C2) on the main path, a location with a number of predecessors in $[3, \alpha + 1]$, is followed by $\beta$ locations with at least $\alpha + 3$ predecessors, and

(C3) the number of locations on the main path is a multiple of $\beta + 1$.

It is easy to check that the formulae $\varphi_{C1}$, $\varphi_{C2}$ and $\varphi_{C3}$ in 1SL2($\ast$) defined below are able to express the conditions (C1), (C2) and (C3), respectively. This assumes that the heap is already known to be a fishbone, which is equivalent to the satisfaction of $\varphi_{fb}$ (by Lemma 3.1.1).

$$
\varphi_{(C1)} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \ \text{first}(u) \land (3 \leq \#u \leq \alpha + 2)
$$

$$
\varphi_{(C2)} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u \ (3 \leq \#u \leq \alpha + 2) \Rightarrow \bigwedge_{i \in [1, \beta]} \#u^+ \geq \alpha + 3
$$

$$
\varphi_{(C3)} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u \ (3 \leq \#u \leq \alpha + 2) \Rightarrow ((-\#u^{(\beta + 1)} \geq 0) \lor (3 \leq \#u^{(\beta + 1)} \leq \alpha + 2))
$$

We write $dw(\alpha, \beta)$ to denote the formula $\varphi_{fb} \land \varphi_{(C1)} \land \varphi_{(C2)} \land \varphi_{(C3)}$. It specifies the shape of the encoding of data words in $([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N}^\beta)^+$ as stated below.

Lemma 3.1.2. Let $h$ be a heap. We have $h \models dw(\alpha, \beta)$ iff $h$ is an $\alpha, \beta$-fishbone.

Again, the proof is by an easy verification by using Lemma 3.1.1 and the correspondence between the condition (Ci) and the formula $\varphi_{(Cij)}$.

Given a data word $dw = (a^1, v^1_1, \ldots, v^1_\beta) \cdots (a^L, v^L_1, \ldots, v^L_\beta)$, we can associate a $(\alpha, \beta)$-fishbone $h_{\text{bw}}$ with $(1 + \beta) \times L$ locations on the main path, say

$$
l^0_0 \rightarrow l^1_0 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow l^1_\beta \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow l^L_0 \rightarrow l^L_1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow l^L_\beta
$$

such that
3.1. ENCODING DATA WORDS IN 1SL2

• for every $i \in [1, L]$, $\#t^i_0 = a^i + 2$,

• for all $i \in [1, L]$ and all $j \in [1, \beta]$, $\#t^i_j = v^i_j + \alpha + 3$.

We recall that $\#t^i_i$ denotes the number of predecessors of the location $l$ (given an implicit current heap), see also Section 1.2.1.

The heap $h_{\text{dw}}$ is unique modulo isomorphism. This natural encoding generalises the encoding of finite words by heaps in [BDL12, Section 3] (see also a related encoding in [BBL09]) while providing a much more concise representation. Note also that the encoding by itself is of no use since it is essential to be able to operate on it with the logical language at hand.

Conversely, given a $(\alpha, \beta)$-fishbone $h$ with $(1 + \beta) \times L$ locations on the main path, say

$$t^1_0 \rightarrow t^1_1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow t^1_l \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow t^L_0 \rightarrow t^L_1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow t^L_l$$

we associate a (unique) data word $d_{\text{w}} h = (a^1, v^1_1, \ldots, v^1_l) \cdots (a^L, v^L_1, \ldots, v^L_l)$ such that

• for every $i \in [1, L]$, $a^i \overset{\text{def}}{=} \#t^i_0 - 2$ and,

• for all $i \in [1, L]$ and all $j \in [1, \beta]$, $v^i_j \overset{\text{def}}{=} \#t^i_j - \alpha - 3$.

Lemma 3.1.3. There is a one-to-one map between data words in $((\alpha] \times \mathbb{N}^\beta)^+$ and $(\alpha, \beta)$-fishbone heaps (modulo isomorphism).

The proof is then by an easy verification. So, we have seen that finite words can be encoded in 1SL2(*), which allows us to establish that 1SL2(*) is NExpTime-hard since first-order logic restricted to two quantified variables on finite words (written FO$_{2,0}(\prec, +, =)$ herein) is NExpTime-complete [EVW97]. Indeed, consider a sentence $\varphi$ in that fragment of first-order logic. Let us define $tr(\varphi)$ such that $\varphi$ is satisfiable iff $d_{\text{w}}(\alpha, 0) \land tr(\varphi)$ is satisfiable in 1SL2(*). The logarithmic-space translation $tr$ is homomorphic for Boolean connectives and is further defined as follows ($i, j \in \{1, 2\}$).

$$
\begin{align*}
tr(u_i = u_j) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} u_i = u_j \\
tr(a(u_i)) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u_i = a + 2) \\
tr(u_i = 1 + (u_j)) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} u_i \hookrightarrow u_j \\
tr(u_i < u_j) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{reach}(u_i, u_j) \land u_i \neq u_j \\
tr(\exists u_i \varphi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_i (\#u_i \geq 1) \land tr(\varphi).
\end{align*}
$$
Note that $\text{FO}_{2,0}(\prec, +1, =)$ and $1\text{SL}_2(*)$ share the same number of quantified variables and $\text{reach}(u, u_j)$ can be expressed in $1\text{SL}_2(*)$ (see Section 1.2.2). We do not provide the correctness proof herein since we can do much better than NEXP-Time-hardness by making a strong connection with Moszkowski’s Interval Temporal Logic ITL (with the locality condition), see Section 4.2.

3.2 Encoding Arithmetical Constraints in $1\text{SL}_2$

Below, we show how to express in $1\text{SL}_2$ the constraints $\sharp u = \sharp \bar{u}$, $\sharp u = \sharp \bar{u} + 1$ and $\sharp \bar{u} = \sharp u + 1$, when $u$ and $\bar{u}$ are interpreted by locations on the main path of $(\alpha, 2)$-fishbone heaps.

We shall use the fact that $N \leq N'$ ($N, N' \in \mathbb{N}$) iff for every $n \geq 0$, we have $N' \leq n$ implies $N \leq n$. Quantification over the set of natural numbers will be simulated by quantification over disjoint heaps in which $n$ is related to the cardinal of their heap domains. Such quantification is performed thanks to the magic wand operator.

A fork in $h$ is a sequence of distinct locations $l, l_0, l_1, l_2$ such that $h(l_0) = l$, $\tilde{\sharp} l_0 = 2$, $h(l_1) = l_0$, $h(l_2) = l_0$ and $\tilde{\sharp} l_1 = \tilde{\sharp} l_2 = 0$. The endpoint of the fork is $l$. Similarly, a knife in $h$ is a sequence of distinct locations $l, l_0, l_1$ such that $h(l_0) = l$, $\tilde{\sharp} l_0 = 1$, $h(l_1) = l_0$ and $\tilde{\sharp} l_1 = 0$. The endpoint of the knife is $l$. By way of example, the heap of Figure 3.2 contains three knives, two forks and four endpoints (identified by ‘∗’).

![Figure 3.2: A heap with three knives, two forks and four endpoints.](image)

**Lemma 3.2.1.** Let $h$ be a $(\alpha, \beta)$-fishbone heap with $\alpha \geq 1$ and $\beta \geq 0$. Then, $h$ has no knife and no fork.
Indeed, in such heaps, any allocated location has no predecessor or at least three predecessors.

A heap \( h \) is a collection of knives \( \iff \) there is no location in \( \text{dom}(h) \) that does not belong to a knife and no distinct knives share the same endpoint. A heap \( h \) is segmented whenever \( \text{dom}(h) \cap \text{ran}(h) = \emptyset \) and no location has strictly more than one predecessor.

**Lemma 3.2.2.** Let \( h \) be a \((\alpha, \beta)\)-fishbone heap with \( \alpha \geq 1 \), \( \beta \geq 0 \) and \( h' \) be a segmented heap disjoint from \( h \). Then, \( h \cup h' \) has no fork.

Being segmented can be naturally expressed in 1SL2:

\[
\text{seg} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u \ (u \hookrightarrow u \Rightarrow ((\#u = 1) \land (\#u = 0) \land \neg \text{alloc}(u))).
\]

The statement below is counterpart to [BDL12, Lemma 5.2] with simplified properties and with simpler formulae but using only two quantified variables.

**Lemma 3.2.3.** There are formulae \( \text{fork}_y(u) \), KS and KS1F in 1SL2 such that for every heap \( h \),

(I) \( h \models \text{fork}_y(u) \) iff all the predecessors of \( f(u) \) are endpoints of forks,

(II) \( h \models \text{KS} \) iff \( h \) is a collection of knives,

(III) \( h \models \text{KS1F} \) iff there are \( h_1, h_2 \) such that \( h = h_1 \cup h_2 \), \( h_1 \) is a collection of knives and \( h_2 \) is made of a unique fork such that its unique endpoint is not in the range of \( h_1 \).

**Proof.** \( \text{fork}_y(u) \) is equal to:

\[
\forall u \ (u \hookrightarrow u \Rightarrow (\exists u \ (u \hookrightarrow u) \land (\#u = 2) \land \neg (\#u^{-1} \geq 1))).
\]

A knife is made of two consecutive memory cells that can be respectively called part 1 and part 2 as shown in \( l_1 \xrightarrow{\text{part 1}} l' \xrightarrow{\text{part 2}} l'' \).

\[
\text{KS} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall u \ \text{alloc}(u) \Rightarrow (\varphi_{\text{part 1}}(u) \lor \varphi_{\text{part 2}}(u))
\]

where

\[
\varphi_{\text{part 1}}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u = 0) \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land (\#u^+^2 = 1) \land \neg (\#u^+^3 \geq 0)
\]

\[
\varphi_{\text{part 2}}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u = 1) \land (\#u^{-1} = 0) \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land \neg (\#u^+^2 \geq 0).
\]
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

\[
KS1F \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{unique fork}
\]

\[
[\exists u (\#u = 2) \wedge (\#u^{+1} = 1) \wedge \neg(\#u^{+2} \geq 0) \wedge \neg(\#u^{-1} \geq 1) \wedge \neg(\exists \bar{u} (u \neq \bar{u}) \wedge (\#\bar{u} = 2))] \wedge
\]

\[
[\forall u \text{ alloc}(u) \Rightarrow
\]

part with one fork

part with knifes

\[
\left(\varphi_{\text{part1}}(u) \lor \varphi_{\text{part2}}(u) \lor ((\#u = 0) \land (\#u^{+1} = 2)) \lor (\#u = 2))\right]
\]

In our proof, we use the idea of augmenting the heap with a segmented heap, then augmenting it further with knives to form forks whose endpoints are predecessors of \(u\); this is borrowed from [BDL12]. As it is, this would not be sufficient to express arithmetical constraints on fishbone heaps since only two quantified variables are allowed. This restriction is not considered in [BDL12]—the formulae there use strictly more than two quantified variables. This is why we had to provide specific developments that are well-tailored to fishbone heaps while taking into account our limited amount of syntactic resources (this can be generalised to any heap in [DD14]). Simplifications have also been made in order to focus on undecidability rather than on questions of expressive power. Note also that there are versions of separation logics in which arithmetical constraints are built-in, for instance about the length of lists, see e.g. [BIP10].

Lemma 3.2.4. Let \(h\) be a heap with \(h = h_1 \uplus h_2\) and \(\bar{f}\) be an assignment such that \(h_1\) is a \((\alpha , 2)\)-fishbone \(f(u)\) is on the main path of \(h_1\), \(h_2 \models_{\bar{f}} \text{seg} \land \#u = 0\), \(n = \text{card}(\text{ran}(h_2) \setminus \text{dom}(h_1))\) and \(m\) is the number of predecessors of \(f(u)\) in \(h_1\). We have the following properties:

(I) \(h, \bar{f} \models -\neg(KS \leftrightarrow -\neg \text{forky}(u))\) iff \(n \geq m\).

(II) \(h, \bar{f} \models -\neg(KS1F \leftrightarrow -\neg \text{forky}(u))\) iff \(n \geq m - 1\).

In Figure 3.3 we present three heaps obtained by combining a segmented heap \(h_2\) with collections of knives (corresponding to \(h_3\) in the proof of Lemma 3.2.4). Edges labelled by ‘1’ are part of a fishbone heap \(h_1\) (partially represented) whereas edges labelled by ‘2’ are part of a segmented heap \(h_2\) so that no edge points to \(f(u)\) or to \(f(\bar{u})\). The heap on the left (corresponding to \(h_1 \uplus h_2\) in Lemma 3.2.4) is obtained by adding a segmented heap \(h_2\) whereas the heap in the middle (say \(h_1 \uplus h_2 \uplus h_3\)) is obtained then by adding a collection of knives \(h_3\) so that every predecessor of \(f(u)\) is the endpoint of a fork. Note that not all edges of the segmented
3.2. ENCODING ARITHMETICAL CONSTRAINTS IN 1SL2

Figure 3.3: A segmented heap and collections of knives.

heap are used to build forks. Similarly, the heap on the right (say \( h_1 \cup h_2 \cup h'_3 \)) is obtained then by adding a collection of knives \( h'_3 \) to the heap \( h_1 \cup h_2 \) on the very left so that every predecessor of \( f(u) \) is the endpoint of a fork.

**Proof.** Let us provide the proof for (I). (The proof for (II), being analogous, is omitted.) So, let \( h \) be a heap with \( h = h_1 \cup h_2 \) such that \( h_1 \) is an \((\alpha, 2)\)-fishbone heap, and \( h_2 \models \text{seg} \land \#u = 0 \). Moreover, \( f(u) \) is on the main path, which entails that \( h(f(u)) \neq f(u) \) (if \( h(f(u)) \) is defined at all) and \( f(u) \) has at least one predecessor.

One can make the following (obvious) observations.

(O1) The heap \( h_1 \) has no knives and, \( h_1 \) and \( h_1 \cup h_2 \) have no forks. (see Lemma 3.2.1 and Lemma 3.2.2).

(O2) \( h_1 \cup h_2 \) may not be a \((\alpha, 2)\)-fishbone heap but this is fine since we only need to focus on the number of predecessors of \( f(u) \) (i.e., on the value \( m \)). Indeed, \( h_1 \uplus h_2 \) may contain knives (see the left heap in Figure 3.3). A knife \( l_1 \rightarrow l_2 \rightarrow l_3 \) in \( h_1 \uplus h_2 \) is made of \( l_1 \in \text{dom}(h_2) \) and of \( l_2 \in \text{dom}(h_1) \). This observation is not really used below but, hopefully, it could be helpful to better grasp how the heaps \( h_1 \) and \( h_2 \) are combined.

(O3) \( f(u) \) has the same number of predecessors in \( h_1 \) and in \( h_1 \uplus h_2 \). This is due to the fact that \( h_2 \models \#u = 0 \).

(O4) For every \( n \geq 0 \), there is a disjoint heap \( h'_2 \) such that \( h' = h_1 \uplus h'_2 \), \( h'_2 \models \text{seg} \land \#u = 0 \) and \( \text{card}(\text{ran}(h'_2) \setminus \text{dom}(h_1)) = n \). See the left heap in Figure 3.3.
with \( \text{card}(\text{dom}(b_2)) = 5 \) and \( \text{card}(\text{ran}(b_2) \setminus \text{dom}(b_1)) = 4 \) (look at edges labelled by ‘2’). Once more, this observation is not used below but it will be in the proof of Theorem 3.2.3

First, let us suppose that \( b \models \neg (KS \rightarrow \neg \text{forky}(u)) \), i.e., \((\dagger)\) there is a heap \( h_3 \), disjoint from \( b_1 \cup b_2 \), such that \( (b_1 \cup b_2) \cup h_3 \models \text{forky}(u) \) and \( h_3 \models KS \). Let us make additional observations.

- The only forks in \( b_1 \cup b_2 \cup h_3 \) whose endpoints are predecessors of \( f(u) \) are those obtained with \( l_1 \rightarrow l_2 \) such that \( l_1 \in \text{dom}(b_2) \) (so \( b_2(l_1) = l_2 \), \( l_2 \notin \text{dom}(b_1) \), and \( l_1' \rightarrow l_2' \rightarrow l_3' \) is a knife from \( h_3 \). This is due to (O1) and to the fact that all the predecessors of \( f(u) \) in \( h \) have no predecessors since \( f(u) \) is on the main path of \( h \).

- The number of forks in \( b_1 \cup b_2 \cup h_3 \) whose endpoints are predecessors of \( f(u) \) is therefore less of equal to \( \text{card}(\text{ran}(b_2) \setminus \text{dom}(b_1)) \).

- The number of predecessors of \( f(u) \) in \( b_1 \cup b_2 \cup h_3 \) is greater or equal to the number of its predecessors in \( b_1 \) (by using (O3)). So, if \( b_1 \cup b_2 \cup h_3 \models \text{forky}(u) \), then the number of predecessors of \( f(u) \) in \( b_1 \) is smaller or equal to \( \text{card}(\text{ran}(b_2) \setminus \text{dom}(b_1)) = n \), i.e. \( n \geq m \).

Now, let us establish the other direction and let us suppose that \( n \geq m \) and the predecessors of \( f(u) \) are \( p_1, \ldots, p_m \). Let \( l_1^1, l_2^1, \ldots, l_n^1, l_1^2 \) be locations such that \( \{l_1^1, \ldots, l_m^1\} = \text{ran}(b_2) \setminus \text{dom}(b_1) \) and for every \( i \in [1, n] \), we have \( b_2(l_i^2) = l_i^1 \). Let us build \( h_3 \) so that it satisfies \((\dagger)\), which is quite easy to realise. Let \( l_1^{\text{new}}, \ldots, l_m^{\text{new}} \) be (new) locations that are not in \( \text{dom}(b_1 \cup b_2) \cup \text{ran}(b_1 \cup b_2) \). We define \( h_3 \) so that it contains exactly \( m \) knives whose endpoints are exactly all the predecessors of \( f(u) \). For every \( i \in [1, m] \), we define \( h_3(l_i^{\text{new}}) \overset{\text{def}}{=} l_i^1 \) and \( h_3(l_i^1) \overset{\text{def}}{=} p_i \) (well, that is possible because \( l_i^1 \notin \text{dom}(b_1 \cup b_2) \)). It is easy to check that \( h_3 \) satisfies \((\dagger)\). QED

Consequently, \( b \models \neg (KS \rightarrow \neg \text{forky}(u)) \) iff \( n \geq m \).

Now, we are able to state the main proposition of this section that allows us to compare the numbers of predecessors for two locations on the main path of a fishbone heap. Let us introduce the following abbreviations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\chi_1(u, \bar{u}) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{seg} \land \#u = 0 \land \#\bar{u} = 0 \\
\chi_2(u) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg (KS \rightarrow \neg \text{forky}(u)) \\
\chi_3(u) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg (KS1F \rightarrow \neg \text{forky}(u)).
\end{align*}
\]
3.2. ENCODING ARITHMETICAL CONSTRAINTS IN 1SL2

**Theorem 3.2.5.** [DD15b] Suppose \( h_1 \) is a \((\alpha, 2)\)-fishbone heap and, \( f(u) \) and \( f(\overline{u}) \) are on the main path of \( h_1 \). We have the following equivalences:

- \( h_1 \models (\chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \Rightarrow (\chi_2(\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \chi_2(u))) \) iff \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} \).

- \( h_1 \models (\chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \Rightarrow (\chi_2(\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \chi_3(u))) \) iff \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} + 1 \).

- \( h_1 \models (\chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \Rightarrow (\chi_3(\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \chi_2(u))) \) iff \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} - 1 \).

**Proof.** By way of example, let us show the second property. The other cases are proved in a similar fashion. Let \( h_1 \) be a \((\alpha, 2)\)-fishbone heap. The statements below are equivalent.

1. \( h_1 \models (\chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \Rightarrow (\chi_2(\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \chi_3(u))) \).

2. For every disjoint heap \( h_2 \) such that \( h_1 \cup h_2 \models \chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \), if \( h_1 \cup h_2 \models \chi_2(\overline{u}) \), then \( h_1 \cup h_2 \models \chi_3(u) \). (by definition of \( \models \))

3. For every \( n \geq 0 \), there is a disjoint heap \( h_2 \) with \( \text{card}(\text{ran}(h_2) \setminus \text{dom}(h_1)) = n \) such that \( h_1 \models \chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \) and if \( h_1 \cup h_2 \models \chi_2(\overline{u}) \), then \( h_1 \cup h_2 \models \chi_3(u) \) (see (O4) in the proof of Lemma 3.2.4). This is possible by using the fact that one can add a segmented heap so that the resulting heap has \( n \) isolated memory cells. Indeed, given the heap \( h_1 \), let us build a disjoint heap \( h_2 \) such that \( h_1 \models \chi_1(u, \overline{u}) \) and \( \text{dom}(h_2) = n \) for any fixed \( n \geq 0 \). Since \( X = \text{dom}(h_1) \cup \text{ran}(h_2) \cup \{f(u), f(\overline{u})\} \) is a finite subset of \( \mathbb{N} \), there are \( 2n \) distinct locations \( t^1_1, t^1_2, \ldots, t^1_n, t^n_1 \) in \( \mathbb{N} \setminus X \). We simply need to define \( h_2 \) such that \( \text{dom}(h_2) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{t^1_1, \ldots, t^n_1\} \), \( \text{ran}(h_2) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{t^1_2, \ldots, t^n_2\} \) and for all \( i \in [1, n] \), we set \( b_2(t^1_i) \overset{\text{def}}{=} t^n_i \).

4. For every \( n \geq 0 \), we have \( n \geq \#\overline{u} \) in \( h_1 \) implies \( n \geq \#u - 1 \) in \( h_1 \). (by Lemma 3.2.4)

5. \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} + 1 \). \( \text{QED} \)

Theorem 3.2.5 can be generalised by restricting ourselves to formulæ in 1SL2(\(\rightarrow\)) and without assuming any peculiar property on the heap \( h_1 \).

**Theorem 3.2.6.** [DD14] There are formulæ in 1SL2(\(\rightarrow\)) that can express the properties \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} \), \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} + 1 \) or \( \#u \leq \#\overline{u} - 1 \) (whatever the heap).
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIONNESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

3.3 Undecidability of 1SL2

3.3.1 Constraints between locations at distance three

This section is quite technical and it can be skipped for a first reading. Actually, Theorem 3.3.4 is used in forthcoming Section 3.3.2 in which runs of Minsky machines are encoded as (α, 2)-fishbone heaps. So, we should be able to compare the respective numbers of predecessors for two locations on the main path whose distance is three (number of edges to reach one location from the other one). Indeed, this is required to guarantee that the encoding of the counter values respects the instructions of the Minsky machine.

The goal of this section is the following: given a formula χ(u, v) equal to either ♯u = ♯v or ♯u = ♯v + 1 (in particular, this means that χ(u, v) only deals with numbers of predecessors and Section 3.2 explains how to define these formulae in 1SL2), we show how to define a formula in 1SL2, say χ^+(u), such that

\[ h \models \chi^+(u) \iff h \models \forall f \exists v\chi^+(v) \chi(u, v). \]

assuming that \( h^3(f(u)) \) is defined, \( h \models \exists v\chi^+(v) \chi(u, v) \) and \( f(u) \) is on the main path. When \( \chi(u, v) \) is equal to \( ♯u = ♯v \) [resp. \( ♯u = ♯v + 1 \)], we write \( ♯u = ♯u^3 \) [resp. \( ♯u = ♯u^3 + 1 \)] instead of \( χ^+(u) \). Note that if we had three quantified variables, defining \( χ^+(u) \) would not require much work since the formula below does the job:

\[ \exists u'\ (u \leftrightarrow u' \land \exists v\ (u' \leftrightarrow v \land \exists u'\ (v \leftrightarrow u' \land χ(u, u'))) \].

Let us start our construction. To do so, let \( h \) be a heap and \( f \) be an assignment such that \( h \models \exists \exists v\ (v \in \text{dom}(h) \land \text{is-ancestor}(v')) \) and \( □u \geq □u + 3 \). In the statements below, this property is always satisfied.

The u-3cut of \( h \) is the minimal subheap \( h_{3\text{cut}} \) of \( h \) (with respect to set inclusion of the domain and therefore \( h_{3\text{cut}} \subseteq h \)) such that all the ancestors of \( l' = h^3(\alpha(u)) \) in \( \text{dom}(h) \) are also ancestors of \( l' \) in \( h_{3\text{cut}} \). As a consequence, \( f(u) \) and \( l' \) have the same amount of predecessors in \( h \) and in the u-3cut heap.

In Figure 3.4, the bottom left heap is the u-3cut of the heap at the top. When \( h \models □u^4 = 0 \), the almost u-3cut of \( h \) is the minimal subheap of \( h \) containing the u-3cut heap and such that \( □u^4 = 1 \) holds true. The almost u-3cut of \( h \) contains the edge from \( l' \) which is the only predecessor of the interpretation of \( u^4 \). In Figure 3.4, the middle left heap is the almost u-3cut of the heap at the top. Below, we explain how to obtain the u-3cut of some heap, possibly via the construction of the almost u-3cut, if it exists.
3.3. UNDECIDABILITY OF 1SL2

Lemma 3.3.1 below states that all we need to define $\chi^+(u)$ is to be able to express a property in its u-3cut. In particular, the only location that is unallocated and on the main path is $h^3(f(u))$.

**Lemma 3.3.1.** Let $h \models f \text{dw}(\alpha, 2) \land (\#u^+ \geq 0) \land (\#u \geq \alpha + 3)$ and $h'$ be its u-3cut heap. Then, $h \models [f \rightarrow b((f(u)))] \chi(u, \bar{u})$ iff $h' \models (\exists \bar{u} \neg \text{alloc}(\bar{u}) \land \#\bar{u} \geq 1 \land \chi(u, \bar{u}))$.

**Proof.** Let $l' = h^3(f(u))$ and $l = f(u)$. Let $h'$ be the u-3cut heap of $h$. We have $(\dagger)$ if $l$ in $h$ is equal to $l'$ in $h'$ and $l''$ in $h$ is equal to $l'$ in $h'$. Indeed, the u-3cut heap $h'$ is a subheap of $h$ such that all the ancestors of $l'$ in $h$ are also ancestors of $l'$ in $h'$ and $l$ is an ancestor of $l'$ in $h$. Note also that $l'$ is the unique location such that $h' \models (\exists \bar{u} \neg \text{alloc}(\bar{u}) \land \#\bar{u} \geq 1) \chi(u, \bar{u})$ iff $h' \models [f \rightarrow b((f(u)))] \chi(u, \bar{u})$ by $(\dagger)$. Note that we use the fact that $\chi(u, \bar{u})$ specifies a property about the numbers of predecessors. QED

When $h$ is equal to its u-3cut, i.e. when $(\#u^+ \geq 0)$ does not hold, we have $h \models [f \rightarrow b((f(u)))] \chi(u, \bar{u})$ iff $h \models \phi_{UC}(u)$ with

$$\phi_{UC}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\exists \bar{u} \neg \text{alloc}(\bar{u}) \land \#\bar{u} \geq 1 \land \chi(u, \bar{u}))$$

Now, let us consider the case when $h$ is not equal to its u-3cut (probably, the most common situation) and let us show how to separate the current heap so that we can isolate the u-3cut heap.

**Lemma 3.3.2.** Let $h \models f \text{dw}(\alpha, 2) \land (\#u^+ \geq 0) \land (\#u \geq \alpha + 3)$ and $\phi(u)$ be an arbitrary formula. Then, $h \models 1\text{comp} \ast (1\text{comp} \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land \neg(\#u^+ \geq 0) \land \phi(u))$ iff the almost u-3cut of $h$, say $h''$, satisfies: $h'' \models \phi(u)$.

The formula $1\text{comp}$ was introduced in Section 1.2.2 and it states that the heap is made of a unique connected component (see also Exercise 1.15). The way $h$ has to be divided to satisfy the formula is illustrated by the two heaps in the middle of Figure 3.4.

**Proof.** Let $h$ be heap such that $h \models f \text{dw}(\alpha, 2) \land (\#u^+ \geq 0) \land (\#u \geq \alpha + 3)$. Let $h'$ be the almost u-3cut heap of $h$ and $h''$ be the heap such that $h = h' \cup h''$. By construction of $h'$, it is easy to check that $h' \models 1\text{comp} \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land \neg(\#u^+ \geq 0)$. Similarly, $h'' \models 1\text{comp}$. This implies that $h \models 1\text{comp} \ast (1\text{comp} \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land \neg(\#u^+ \geq 0))$.

So, suppose that the almost u-3cut heap of $h$ satisfies: $h' \models \phi(u)$. This means that $h'' \models 1\text{comp}$ and $h' \models (1\text{comp} \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land \neg(\#u^+ \geq 0) \land \phi(u))$. Hence, $h \models 1\text{comp} \ast (1\text{comp} \land (\#u^+ = 1) \land \neg(\#u^+ \geq 0) \land \phi(u))$. 78
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

Now, suppose that \( h \models \text{1comp} \ast (\text{1comp} \land (\#u^{+4} = 1) \land \neg(\#u^{+5} \geq 0) \land \varphi(u)) \). There are heaps \( h_1 \) and \( h_2 \) such that \( h_2 \models \text{1comp} \) and \( h_1 \models \text{1comp} \land (\#u^{+4} = 1) \land \neg(\#u^{+5} \geq 0) \land \varphi(u) \). In particular, this means that \( h_1 \models \text{1comp} \land (\#u^{+4} = 1) \land \neg(\#u^{+5} \geq 0) \).

Let us show that there is a unique pair \( (h_1, h_2) \) of heaps satisfying that property and \( h_1 = h' \), which will entail that \( h' \models \varphi(u) \). First note that

\[
[f(u), b(f(u)), b^2(f(u)), b^3(f(u)), b^4(f(u)) \subseteq \text{dom}(h_1) \quad b^5(f(u)) \notin \text{dom}(h_1)
\]

Since \( h_1 \models (\#u^{+4} = 1) \), all the predecessors of \( b^4(f(u)) \), apart from \( b^3(f(u)) \), are in \( \text{dom}(h_2) \) and there are more than two such predecessors since \( b^4(f(u)) \) is on the main path of \( h \) and therefore has at least three predecessors in \( h \).

Hence, \( h_1 \) contains also all the ancestors of \( b^3(f(u)) \), otherwise \( h_2 \) would have at least two distinct connected components. So, the u-3cut heap of \( h \) is also a subheap of \( h_1 \).

Now, it is easy to check that if any location in \( \text{dom}(h'') \) that is not a predecessor of \( b^4(f(u)) \) were in \( \text{dom}(h_1) \), then \( h_1 \) would have more than two connected components. Hence, \( h_1 \) is the almost u-3cut heap of \( h \) and therefore \( h' \models \varphi(u) \). QED

Let us build on Lemma 3.3.2 so as to be able to specify properties on the u-3cut heap.

**Lemma 3.3.3.** Let \( h \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 2) \land (\#u^{+4} \geq 0) \land (\#u \geq \alpha + 3) \) and \( \varphi(u) \) be the formula \((\text{size} = 1)*(-\neg(\#u^{+4} \geq 0) \land \varphi_{\text{UC}}(u)) \). Then, \( h \models 1\text{comp} \ast (1\text{comp} \land (\#u^{+4} = 1) \land \neg(\#u^{+5} \geq 0) \land \varphi(u)) \) iff the u-3cut of \( h \), say \( h' \), satisfies: \( h' \models \varphi_{\text{UC}}(u) \).

Below, the auxiliary formulae \( \varphi(u) \) and \( \varphi_{\text{UC}}(u) \) (in ISL2):

\[
\varphi(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\text{size} = 1) \ast (-\neg(\#u^{+4} \geq 0) \land \varphi_{\text{UC}}(u))
\]

\[
\varphi_{\text{UC}}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} 1\text{comp} \ast (1\text{comp} \land (\#u^{+4} = 1) \land \neg(\#u^{+5} \geq 0) \land \varphi(u))
\]

The proof for Lemma 3.3.3 is also by an easy verification by observing that an almost u-3cut heap is equal to the u-3cut plus one memory cell (see Figure 3.4).

By combining Lemma 3.3.1 and 3.3.3 we get the following proposition by performing a case analysis depending whether \( \#u^{+4} \geq 0 \) holds true or not on the heap \( h \).

**Theorem 3.3.4.** \([DD15b]\) Let \( h \) be a heap and \( f \) be an assignment such that \( h \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 2) \land (\#u^{+3} \geq 0) \land (\#u \geq \alpha + 3) \). We have \( h \models [f \mapsto b^3(f(u))] \lambda(u, \bar{u}) \) iff \( h \models \lambda^{+3}(u) \) with the formula \( \lambda^{+3}(u) \) defined below:

\[
\lambda^{+3}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (-\neg(\#u^{+4} \geq 0) \land \varphi_{\text{UC}}(u)) \lor ((\#u^{+4} \geq 0) \land \varphi_{\text{UC}}(u))
\]
3.3. **UNDECIDABILITY OF 1SL2**

---

**Proof.** We distinguish two cases depending whether $h$ is itself its u-3cut or not.

**Case 1:** $\neg(\sharp u^4 \geq 0)$, i.e. $h$ is its own u-3cut heap. By Lemma 3.3.1, if $h \models [\sharp u^d = 0 \land \neg(\sharp u^5 \geq 0)] \chi(u, \overline{u})$, then $h \models q_{UC}(u)$ and therefore $h \models \chi^+(u)$. Conversely, if $h \models \chi^+(u)$, then $h \models q_{UC}(u)$ since $(\sharp u^4 \geq 0)$ does not hold on $h$. Again, by Lemma 3.3.1 we get that $h \models [\sharp u^d = 0 \land \neg(\sharp u^5 \geq 0)] \chi(u, \overline{u})$.

**Case 2:** $(\sharp u^4 \geq 0)$. By Lemma 3.3.1, if $h \models [\sharp u^d = 0 \land \neg(\sharp u^5 \geq 0)] \chi(u, \overline{u})$, then $h' \models q_{UC}(u)$ where $h'$ is the u-3cut of $h$. By Lemma 3.3.3 this implies that $h \models q_{AUC}(u)$ and therefore $h \models \chi^+(u)$ (thanks to its second disjunction). Conversely, if $h \models \chi^+(u)$, then $h \models q_{AUC}(u)$ since $(\sharp u^4 \geq 0)$ holds on $h$. Again, by Lemma 3.3.3 we get that $h' \models [\sharp u^d = 0 \land \neg(\sharp u^5 \geq 0)] \chi(u, \overline{u})$ and by Lemma 3.3.1, we conclude $h \models [\sharp u^d = 0 \land \neg(\sharp u^5 \geq 0)] \chi(u, \overline{u})$.

Note that the reasoning performed in this section cannot be extended to an arbitrary formula $\chi(u, \overline{u})$ since taking a u-3cut or an almost u-3cut preserves the number of predecessors of $f(u)$ and $h^3(f(u))$ but may not preserve more general properties. Nevertheless, this is sufficient for our needs in Section 3.3.2.

---

Figure 3.4: How to get a u-3cut – Decomposition in two stages.
3.3.2 Reduction from the halting problem for Minsky machines

Let $M$ be a Minsky machine with $\alpha \geq 1$ instructions, where $1$ is the initial instruction and $\alpha$ is the halting instruction. We recall that a machine $M$ has two counters $c_1$ and $c_2$ and the instructions are of the following types:

1. $I$: $c_j := c_j + 1$; goto $J$.
2. $I$: if $c_j = 0$ then goto $J_1$ else $(c_j := c_j - 1$; goto $J_2$).
3. $\alpha$: halt.

When a Minsky machine $M$ has $\alpha \geq 1$ instructions, any run starting from the initial instruction $1$ and ending by the halting instruction $\alpha$ (there is a single such run since $M$ is deterministic) is a data word of dimension two over the finite alphabet $[1, \alpha]$. We have seen that $(\alpha, 2)$-fishbone heaps can be characterised thanks to the formula $\text{dw}(\alpha, 2)$. Obviously, more constraints need to be expressed, typically those related to the first instruction and those related to the halting instruction. Let us start by specifying the limit conditions thanks to the formulae $\varphi_{\text{first}}$ and $\varphi_{\text{last}}$ below.

- The first three locations on the main path have $3, \alpha + 3$, and $\alpha + 3$ predecessors respectively:
  \[ \varphi_{\text{first}} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \text{ first}(u) \land (\#u = 3) \land (\#u^{+1} = \alpha + 3) \land (\#u^{+2} = \alpha + 3). \]

- The main path encoding the run ends by a configuration with the halting instruction:
  \[ \varphi_{\text{last}} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u ((\#u = \alpha + 2) \land (\#u^{+2} \geq 0) \land \neg(\#u^{+3} \geq 0)). \]

Let us call $\varphi^*$ the conjunction of $\text{dw}(\alpha, 2) \land \varphi_{\text{first}} \land \varphi_{\text{last}}$. It specifies the shape of the encoding of the run without taking care of the constraints about counter values and instruction counter.

**Lemma 3.3.5.** Let $h$ be a heap. $h \models \varphi^*$ iff $h$ encodes a data word
\[ \text{dw} = (a^1, v^1_1, v^1_2) \cdots (a^L, v^L_1, v^L_2) \]
such that $a^1 = 1$, $a^L = \alpha$, and $v^1_1 = v^1_2 = 0$. 

81
3.3. UNDECIDABILITY OF 1SL2

Figure 3.5: A (3, 2)-fishbone heap encoding $(1, 0, 0) \rightarrow (2, 1, 0) \rightarrow (1, 1, 1) \rightarrow (2, 2, 1)$

Figure 3.5 presents an encoding of the sequence of configurations $(1, 0, 0) \rightarrow (2, 1, 0) \rightarrow (1, 1, 1) \rightarrow (2, 2, 1)$ when $\alpha = 3$. Note that the (3, 2)-fishbone heap satisfies $\varphi^\star$.

We have provided formulae for basic properties about the encoding of the runs, but this is insufficient. Indeed, three consecutive locations on the main path encode a configuration of the Minsky machine $M$. In order to check that two consecutive configurations correspond to a step that is valid for $M$, we need to compare numbers of predecessors for locations on the main path at distance three from each other. To do so, we use formulae of the form $\chi^{+3}(u)$ when $\chi(u, \overline{u})$ expresses one of the following arithmetical constraints: $\#u = \#\overline{u}$, $\#u = \#\overline{u} + 1$ and $\#\overline{u} = \#u + 1$ (see Section 3.3.1). For each instruction $I \in [1, \alpha - 1]$, we build a formula $\varphi_I$ so that the Minsky machine $M$ halts iff the formula

$$\varphi^\star \land \bigwedge_{I \in [1, \alpha - 1]} \chi_I$$

is satisfiable in 1SL2. It remains to define $\chi_I$ for each instruction $I$.

If the instruction $I$ is of the form “$I$: $c_j := c_j + 1$; goto $J$” then we need to check the following properties:

1. If a location $l$ encodes the instruction $I$ on the main path (i.e. $\overline{l} = I + 2$) and $b^3(l)$ is defined, then the location $b^3(l)$ encodes the instruction $I$.  

Demri, Deters: Logical Investigations on Separation Logics (Draft) – September 8, 2015– ESSLLI’15
2. If a location \( l \) encodes the value for the counter \( c_j \) in a configuration with instruction \( I \) (i.e., \( \#l \geq \alpha + 3 \) and the \( j \)th ancestor of \( l \) has \( I + 2 \) predecessors) and \( h^3(l) \) is defined, then \( \#l + 1 = \#h^3(l) \).

3. Similarly, if a location \( l \) encodes the value for the counter \( c_{3-j} \) (i.e., the counter \( c_{3-j} \) is not updated after instruction \( I \)) in a configuration with instruction \( I \) (i.e., \( \#l \geq \alpha + 3 \) and the \( j \)th ancestor of \( l \) has \( I + 2 \) predecessors) and \( h^3(l) \) is defined, then \( \#l = \#h^3(l) \).

The properties can be expressed by the formula \( \chi_I \) below:

\[
\forall u (\#u^3 \geq 0) \Rightarrow [((\#u = I + 2) \Rightarrow (\#u^3 = J + 2)) \land \neg \exists u (\#u = I + 2) \land (\#u^3 = J + 2)]
\]

Each subformula decorated by a curly bracket with (i) expresses exactly the property (i) above. Note that \( \#u^3 = J + 2 \) states that the number of predecessors of \( h^3(f(u)) \) is \( J + 2 \), which is quite easy to express in 1SL2 (see Section 1.2.2). By contrast, the formula \( \#u = \#u^3 - 1 \) states that the number of predecessors of \( h^3(f(u)) \) is equal to the number of predecessors of \( f(u) \) plus one, which requires the more sophisticated formulae introduced in Section 3.2 and in Section 3.3.1.

Similarly, let \( I \) be the instruction “\( I: \) if \( c_j = 0 \) then goto \( J_1 \) else (\( c_j := c_j - 1; \) goto \( J_2 \))” then \( \chi_I \) is defined as follows:

\[
\forall u (\#u^3 \geq 0) \Rightarrow [((\#u = I + 2) \land (\#u^3 = \alpha + 3) \Rightarrow (\#u^3 = J_1 + 2)) \land \neg \exists u (\#u = I + 2) \land (\#u^3 = \alpha + 3)]
\]

83
3.3. UNDECIDABILLITY OF 1SL2

The subformula decorated by a curly bracket with (4) states that if a location \( l \) encodes the instruction \( I \) and \( h^j(l) \) has \( \alpha + 3 \) predecessors (i.e., counter \( c_j \) has value zero), then the location \( h^3(l) \) has \( J_1 + 2 \) predecessors (i.e., the next instruction is \( J_1 \)). Similarly, the subformula decorated by a curly bracket with (5) states that if a location \( l \) encodes the instruction \( I \) and \( h^j(l) \) has strictly more than \( \alpha + 3 \) predecessors (i.e., counter \( c_j \) has non-zero value), then the location \( h^3(l) \) has \( J_2 + 2 \) predecessors (i.e., the next instruction is \( J_2 \)). Moreover, the subformula decorated by a curly bracket with (6) states that if a location \( l \) has at least \( \alpha + 3 \) predecessors and its \( j \)th ancestor has \( I + 2 \) predecessors (i.e., counter \( c_j \) has non-zero value and we are really dealing with instruction \( I \)), then the number of predecessors of \( h^3(l) \) is equal to the number of predecessors of \( l \) minus one, which corresponds to encode a decrement on counter \( c_j \). Subformulae (7) and (8) admit a similar reading.

It is now easy to show the following lemma since we have seen that all the constraints between consecutive configurations can be encoded in 1SL2, assuming that the heap encodes a data word in \([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N}^2)^+\).

**Lemma 3.3.6.** \( M \) has a halting run iff

\[
dw(\alpha, 2) \land \varphi_{\text{first}} \land \varphi_{\text{last}} \land \bigwedge_{i \in [1, \alpha]} \chi_I
\]

is satisfiable in 1SL2.

Below, we conclude by a major undecidability result.

**Theorem 3.3.7.** [DD15b] 1SL2 satisfiability problem is undecidable.

We know that if the number of quantified variables is not restricted, 1SL(\( \rightarrow \)) is undecidable too [BDL12] and recently the satisfiability problem for 1SL2(\( \rightarrow \)) has been shown undecidable as well [DD14], but this requires a far more complex proof passing via an equivalence to weak second-order logic (see the main steps of the proof in forthcoming Section 3.4).
3.4 Expressive Completeness

In Section 1.3.3, we have seen how 1SL2 can be translated into 1DSOL. Below, we provide the translation in the other direction with the fragment 1SL2(\(\ast\)), which is much more complicated as explained below. Material from this section is quite involved and can be skipped for a first reading; it is mainly taken from the submitted paper [DD14]. A reduction from 1DSOL into 1SL(\(\ast\)) can be also found in [BDL12].

In order to express sentences in DSOL by sentences in 1SL2(\(\ast\)), a hybrid valuation is encoded in the heap by building a disjoint valuation heap that takes care of pairs of locations (for interpretation of second-order variables) and that takes care of locations (for interpretation of first-order variables). In principle, this makes sense since every heap has a finite domain and therefore there is always an infinite set of locations that is not in its domain. This leaves enough room to encode a finite amount of information such as the interpretation of second-order variables when they are interpreted by finite sets. We can easily add to the original heap with the magic wand; this permits us to create and update the valuation heap. However, we then must always be able to distinguish between the original heap and the valuation heap.

The main idea to build such a valuation heap rests on the fact that a pair of locations \((l, l')\) belongs to the interpretation of a second-order variable \(P_i\) whenever \(l\) and \(l'\) can be identified in the valuation heap by special patterns involving \(l\) and \(l'\) that uniquely characterise the interpretation by \(P_i\). Similarly, a location \(l\) is the interpretation of a first-order variable whenever \(l\) can be identified in the valuation heap thanks to some dedicated pattern around \(l\).

Before explaining further the general principles, let us first provide more information about the above-mentioned patterns. An entry of degree \(d \geq 2\) is a sequence of distinct locations \(l_1, \ldots, l_d, l_{\text{mb}}, l\) such that

- \(b(l_1) = \cdots = b(l_d) = l_{\text{mb}},\)
- \(\tilde{\#}l_{\text{mb}} = d,\)
- \(\tilde{\#}l_1 = \cdots = \tilde{\#}l_d = 0,\) and
- \(b(l_{\text{mb}}) = l.\)

The location \(l\) is called the element, \(l_{\text{mb}}\) the index and the locations \(l_1, \ldots, l_d, l_{\text{mb}}, l\) such that
and are called markers in [BDL12]. See an entry of degree 4 in the middle of Figure 3.6. So, the pair of locations \((l, l')\) is identified as part of the interpretation of \(P_i\) when \(l\) and \(l'\) are elements of entries with very large degree. The above-mentioned special patterns are therefore entries, but we require that the degree of the respective entries for \(l\) and \(l'\) satisfy some arithmetical constraints, which is possible thanks to Theorem 3.2.5 and which allows us to relate \(l\) with \(l'\).

Then, the principle of the translation consists in building the valuation heap on demand (typically when a quantification appears) and to find special patterns involving entries with large degree whenever an atomic formula needs to be evaluated.

These principles have been introduced in [BDL12] to translate 1DSOL formulae into 1SL(\(\ast\)) formulae. However, because we are restricted to two first-order variables and because we also require that the separating conjunction is banished, we present below a different way to apply these principles so that we can show that 1SL2(\(\ast\)) is expressively equivalent to DSOL (and therefore to 1WSOL).

This high-level description of the formula translation and of the encoding of some hybrid valuation in the heap hides many of the details, which can be found below. However, before explaining how we apply these principles within 1SL2(\(\ast\)), let us emphasise the most obvious and difficult problems to be solved:

- we must be able to distinguish the pairs of locations from distinct second-order variables,
- we also need to encode first-order valuations, and
- the main problem is certainly to access the original heap properly without interference from the valuation heap.

### 3.4.1 Left and right parentheses

We introduce variants of entries that are used as delimiters.

A **left \(j\)-parenthesis of degree** \(d \geq 3\) **with** \(j \geq 0\) is a sequence of distinct locations \(l_{j+1}', l_1', \ldots, l_1, l_d, l_{\text{inb}}\) such that

- \(h(l_1) = \cdots = h(l_d) = l_{\text{inb}}; \#l_{\text{inb}} = d; \#l_{j+1}' = \#l_3 = \#l_4 = \cdots = \#l_j = 0,\)

- \(l_{\text{inb}} \notin \text{dom}(h); l_{j+1}' \rightarrow l_j' \rightarrow l_{j-1}' \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow l_1' \rightarrow l_1; \#l_j' = \#l_{j-1}' = \cdots = \#l_1' = \#l_j = 1,\) and
The location $l_{\text{inb}}$ is called the \textit{index}. The heap at the left of Figure 3.6 presents a left $j$-parenthesis of degree 3.

A \textit{right} $j$-\textit{parenthesis of degree $d \geq 3$ with $j \geq 0$} is a sequence of distinct locations $l'_{j+1}, \ldots, l'_1, l''_1, \ldots, l''_1, l_1, \ldots, l_d, l_{\text{inb}}$ such that $u$, $(v)$, and

\begin{itemize}
  \item $\#l'_{j+1} = 0$,
  \item $\#l'_{j} = \#l'_{j-1} = \cdots = \#l''_1 = \#l_2 = 1$, and
  \item $l''_1 \rightarrow l''_2 \rightarrow l''_1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow l'_1 \rightarrow l_2$.
\end{itemize}

The location $l_{\text{inb}}$ is also called the \textit{index}. The heap at the right of Figure 3.6 presents a right $j$-parenthesis of degree 5. A $j$-parenthesis can be understood as an entry, except that the index location is not allocated, and containing one or two paths of length $j + 1$, depending whether it is a left or a right parenthesis.

\textbf{Lemma 3.4.1.} For all $j \geq 0$, there is a formula $lp_j(u)$ [resp. $rp_j(u)$] in 1SL2($\rightarrow$) such that for all heaps $h$ and valuations $f$, we have $h \models f$ $lp_j(u)$ [resp. $h \models f$ $rp_j(u)$] iff $f(u)$ is the index of some left [resp. right] $j$-parenthesis in $h$.

\textbf{Proof.} Let us start by defining formulae for backward paths of length $j + 1$:

\begin{itemize}
  \item $bpath(1, u) \eqdef (\#u = 1) \land \forall \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftarrow u) \Rightarrow \#\bar{u} = 0$.
  \item $bpath(j + 1, u) \eqdef (\#u = 1) \land \exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftarrow u) \land bpath(j, \bar{u})$.
\end{itemize}

So, whenever $j \geq 0$, we have $h \models f bpath(j + 1, u)$ iff there are $l_0, \ldots, l_j$ such that $l_0 \rightarrow l_1 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow l_j \leftarrow f(u)$ and $\#l_0 = 0$, for every $k \in [1, j]$ $\#l_k = 1$ and $\#f(u) = 1$.

The formula below characterises the locations such that the predecessors either have no predecessor or have a backward path of length $j + 1$ exactly:

$$\chi_{j+1}(u) \eqdef \forall \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftarrow u) \Rightarrow (\#\bar{u} = 0 \lor bpath(j + 1, \bar{u})).$$

Then, the formulae $lp_j(u)$ and $rp_j(u)$ are defined as follows:

\begin{itemize}
  \item $lp_j(u) \eqdef \neg \text{alloc}(u) \land \chi_{j+1}(u) \land (\#u \geq 3) \land (\exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftarrow u) \land bpath(j + 1, \bar{u})) \land (\text{size} = 1) \Rightarrow \chi_{j+2}(u))$.
\end{itemize}
3.4. EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS

- $\text{rp}_j(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg \text{alloc}(u) \land \chi_{j+1}(u) \land (\#u \geq 3) \land (\exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \hookrightarrow u) \land \text{bpath}(j + 1, \bar{u})) \land 
\neg ((\text{size} = 1) \not\Rightarrow \chi_{j+2}(u)) \land ((\text{size} = 1) \not\Rightarrow ((\text{size} = 1) \not\Rightarrow \chi_{j+2}(u))).$

The formula $\text{lp}_j(u)$ states that $f(u)$ is not allocated, it has at least three predecessors and any predecessor of $f(u)$ either has no predecessor or has a backward path of length $j + 1$. Moreover, there is at least one predecessor of $f(u)$ that has a backward path of length $j + 1$ thanks to the satisfaction of the subformula $(\exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \hookrightarrow u) \land \text{bpath}(j + 1, \bar{u}))$. Satisfaction of the subformula $(\text{size} = 1) \not\Rightarrow \chi_{j+2}(u)$ entails that there is only one such backward path of length $j + 1$. A similar analysis can be performed with the formula $\text{rp}_j(u)$ with the exception that it is required to guarantee that there are exactly two predecessors of $f(u)$ that have a backward path of length $j + 1$. QED

In several places, we need to identify the indices from entries as well as their pins. Let $\text{eindex}(u)$ be defined as follows:

$$\text{eindex}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u \geq 2) \land \text{allzpred}(u) \land \exists \bar{u} u \hookrightarrow \bar{u}$$

that characterises indices from entries. The formula $\#u \geq 2$ states that the number of predecessors of $u$ with zero predecessor is at least 2 and $\text{allzpred}(u)$ holds true when all the predecessors of $u$ have no predecessor, see Exercise 3.5. Let $\text{epin}(u)$ characterise pins from entries:

$$\text{epin}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists \bar{u} u \hookrightarrow \bar{u} \land \text{eindex}(\bar{u}).$$

Similarly, we need to characterise the locations from parentheses. We already know how to identify their indices (Lemma 3.4.1). It remains to identify the other locations via the formula $\text{onpar}_i(u)$ to characterise the locations on some $i$-parenthesis: roughly speaking, such locations are exactly those that can reach the index of some $i$-parenthesis in less than $i + 2$ steps. Let $\text{onpar}_i(u)$ be the formula

$$\text{onpar}_i(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{j=0}^{i+2} \text{dist}_i(j, u)$$

with $\text{dist}_i(0, u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{lp}_i(u) \lor \text{rp}_i(u)$, and $\text{dist}_i(j+1, u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists \bar{u} (u \hookrightarrow \bar{u}) \land \text{dist}_i(j, \bar{u})$ for all $j \geq 0$.

**Lemma 3.4.2.** Let $h$ be a heap, $f$ be a valuation and $i \geq 0$. Then, $h \models f \text{ onpar}_i(u)$ iff $f(u)$ is on some left or right $i$-parenthesis in $h$. 

88
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

Proof. The proof takes advantage of the following properties.

- \( h \models \text{dist}(j, u) \) iff \( f(u) \) can reach an index location from a left \( i \)-parenthesis or from a right \( i \)-parenthesis, in \( j \) steps for some \( j \geq 0 \). The proof is obvious, by induction on \( j \).

- If \( f(u) \) can reach an index location from an \( i \)-parenthesis, then \( f(u) \) is necessarily on an \( i \)-parenthesis.

- Every location on an \( i \)-parenthesis can reach its index in less than \( i + 2 \) steps.

As a conclusion, \( f(u) \) is on an \( i \)-parenthesis iff it can reach the index of some \( i \)-parenthesis in less than \( i + 2 \) steps, which is exactly the way \( \text{onpar}(u) \) is defined with the help of the generalised disjunction.

QED

3.4.2 The role of parentheses

Before explaining the role of parentheses, we introduce the interval of variable indices \( [1, K] \) \( (K \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}) \) assuming that for each \( j \in [1, K] \), either \( P_j \) or \( u_j \) occurs in the 1DSOL formula to be translated (but not both of them). So, the developments below are relative to a finite set of first-order and second-order variables and this is concretised by the interval \( [1, K] \) (always possible since a formula has a finite number of variables).

Let us come back to parentheses and assume that \( X \) is a subset of \( [0, K] \). In an \( X \)-well-formed heap \( h \) (see Definition 3.4.9 below), the parentheses play the following role. For each \( j \in X \), we have the index location \( \overline{lp}_j \) from a distinguished left \( j \)-parenthesis and the index location \( \overline{rp}_j \) from a distinguished right \( j \)-parenthesis. Moreover, let \( d_l^j = \overline{lp}_j \) and \( d_r^j = \overline{rp}_j \) (in \( h \)). When \( j \in X \) is related to a first-order variable, we require that \( d_r^j = d_l^j + 2 \) and there is an entry of degree \( d_l^j + 1 \) such that its element is understood as the interpretation of the variable \( u_j \) (see Figure 3.6 with \( d_r^j = 5 \) and \( d_l^j = 3 \)). That explains why the parentheses are viewed as delimiters.

Similarly, let \( \{(l_1, l'_1), \ldots, (l_\beta, l'_\beta)\} \) be a finite set of pairs of locations, understood as the interpretation of a second-order variable \( P_j \) with \( j \in X \). In \( h \), there are \( 2\beta \) entries whose respective degrees are exactly \( \{d_l^i + 3(i - 1) + 1, d_l^i + 3(i - 1) + 2 : i \in [1, \beta]\} \) with \( d_r^j = d_l^j + 3\beta + 1 \). A pair of entries of respective degrees \( d_l^i + 3(i - 1) + 1 \) and \( d_l^i + 3(i - 1) + 2 \) have exactly as elements \( l_i \) and \( l'_i \) respectively, which allows
3.4. EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS

Figure 3.6: Encoding $[u_j \mapsto l]$.

to encode the pair $(l_i, l'_i)$. All this underlying encoding makes sense only if the left and right parentheses as well as the entries whose degrees are related to their degrees are uniquely determined (see Condition (1) in Definition 3.4.5, below).

For this reason, we introduce a left $0$-parenthesis and a right $0$-parenthesis with $d^0_l = d^0_r + 1$ ($0$ is not a variable index), the degree $d^0_l$ is strictly greater than the degree of any location in the original heap, all degrees $d^i_j$ with $j \neq 0$ are strictly greater than $d^0_l$ and finally, the above-mentioned entries and parentheses are the only ones with their respective degrees. This guarantees that any entry from a pair of entries with successive degrees serving for the interpretation of a second-order variable, cannot serve twice for another pair or for another variable. Below, we provide the technical developments.

We say that a heap $h$ is made of entries and parentheses only $\iff$ every location in $\text{dom}(h)$ belongs either to a left $i$-parenthesis for some $i \geq 0$, to a right $i$-parenthesis for some $i \geq 0$, or to an entry. Given a heap $h$ made of entries and parentheses only, we define the set $\text{indspect}(h)$ as follows:

$$\text{indspect}(h) \equiv \{ \tilde{\#}l : l \text{ is the index of some entry or parenthesis in } h \}$$

This set $\text{indspect}(h)$ is called the index spectrum of $h$.

Let $h_B$ be a heap such that $\alpha = \max(\{\tilde{\#}l : l \in \mathbb{N}\})$. For instance, if $h_B$ has empty domain, then $\alpha = 0$.

We can now find locations in a heap with a maximal number of predecessors,
and we conclude this section with a definition useful in later constructions. Let us introduce the formula $\text{maxdeg}(u)$:

$$\text{maxdeg}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg \exists \ u \mid \sharp u > \sharp u$$

**Corollary 3.4.3.** For all heaps $h$ and valuations $f$, we have $h \models f$ maxdeg$(u)$ iff $\hat{\#f}(u) = \text{max}(\{\hat{\#l} : l \in \mathbb{N}\})$.

A valuation heap $h_V$ for $h_B$ is made of entries and parentheses only whose degrees are greater than $\text{max}(3, \alpha + 1)$. The heap $h_V$ satisfies the following simple conditions (more constraints will follow): $\text{min}(\text{indspect}(h_V))$ is greater than the value $\text{max}(3, \alpha + 1)$ and it is witnessed by the degree of some left 0-parenthesis; each degree in $\text{indspect}(h_V)$ is witnessed by exactly one entry or parenthesis. Formula $\text{indmin}(u)$ below is satisfied in $h = h_B \uplus h_V$ by a location $l$ witnessing the minimal value in $\text{indspect}(h_V)$:

$$\text{indmin}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{lp}_0(u) \land (\forall u ((u \neq u) \land \text{lp}_0(u)) \Rightarrow \hat{\#u} < \sharp u).$$

Thanks to Section 3.2, we know that it is possible to compare numbers of predecessors as expressed above. So, $\text{indmin}(u)$ holds when $f(u)$ is the unique location that is the index of some left 0-parenthesis with greatest degree.

**Lemma 3.4.4.** Let $f$ be a valuation and $h$ be a heap. We have $h \models f$ indmin$(u)$ iff $f(u)$ is an index of some left 0-parenthesis and there is no other location $l \neq f(u)$ such that $\hat{\#l} \geq \hat{\#f}(u)$ and $l$ is the index of some left 0-parenthesis.

The proof is by an easy verification by using Lemma 3.4.1. Once a heap $h$ satisfies the formula $\exists u \text{indmin}(u)$, the unique location $l_0$ such that $h \models [u \rightarrow l_0]$ indmin$(u)$ (say with $\hat{\#l_0} = d_0$) plays the role of a delimiter between the original heap and the part of the heap that encodes the hybrid valuation.

We have seen that an index spectrum is defined for heaps made of entries and parentheses only. This is fine, but below we adapt the definition to heaps $h$ satisfying $\exists u \text{indmin}(u)$. Let us define the set $spect(h)$ as follows:

$$\text{spect}(h) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{\hat{\#l} : l \text{ is an index of some entry or parenthesis in } h\} \cap [d_0, +\infty[.$$  

The set $\text{spect}(h)$ is called the **spectrum** of $h$. This illustrates how the location $l_0$ and the degree $\hat{\#l_0} = d_0$ play the role of separator between the original heap and the valuation heap.
The subheap encoding the valuation is made of parentheses and entries and we shall need to identify the indices of such patterns. The formula $L\text{index}(u)$ defined below suffices for this purpose:

$$L\text{index}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\exists u \ \text{indmin}(u) \land \#u \leq \#u) \land \left( \bigvee_{i \in [0,K]} (l_p(u) \lor r_p(u)) \right) \lor e\text{index}(u)$$

(u is interpreted as a large index). Given $X \subseteq [0,K]$, we shall use also the following formula:

$$L\text{index}_X(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\exists u \ \text{indmin}(u) \land \#u \leq \#u) \land \left( \bigvee_{i \in X} (l_p(u) \lor r_p(u)) \right) \lor e\text{index}(u).$$

Entries and parentheses with large indices are also called large entries and parentheses, respectively. It is easy to define a large index that is also the index of a left [resp. right] parenthesis. Let $1l_p(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} L\text{index}(u) \land l_p(u)$ and $1r_p(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} L\text{index}(u) \land r_p(u)$ (see Lemma 3.4.1). The large index with a maximal degree can be also characterised as follows:

$$\max L\text{index}(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\forall u L\text{index}(u) \Rightarrow (\#u \leq \#u)) \land L\text{index}(u).$$

Below, we state how the parentheses are organised.

**Definition 3.4.5.** Let $X = \{i_0, \ldots, i_s\} \subseteq [0,K]$ with $0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_s$. A heap $h$ is $X$-almost-well-formed $\overset{\text{def}}{\Rightarrow}$

1. For every $j \in [0,s]$, there is a unique location $l'_j$ [resp. $r'_j$] such that $h \models_{[u \rightarrow v]} 1l_p(j)(u)$ [resp. $h \models_{[u \rightarrow v]} 1r_p(j)(u)$]?

2. For every $j \in [0,s]$, $\#l'_j < \#r'_j$, and $\#r'_0 = \#l'_0 + 1$.

3. For every $j \in [1,s]$, we have $\#l'_j = \#l'_{j-1} + 1$.

4. $h \models_{[u \rightarrow v]} \max L\text{index}(u)$.

5. For every $j \in [1,s]$, if $i_j$ is the index of a first-order variable, then $\#l'_j = \#l'_{j-1} - 2$ (see Figure 3.6).

6. For every $j \in ([1,K] \setminus X)$, there is no location $l$ such that $h \models_{[u \rightarrow v]} 1l_p(j)(u) \lor 1r_p(j)(u)$.
The definition for $X$-almost-well-formed heaps mainly specifies the existence of $j$-parentheses with $j \in X$ and how their respective degrees are related. The degrees are organised as follows and they all belong to the spectrum of $h$ (below we let $d^l_j = \#l_j$ and $d^r_j = \#r_j$).

$$
\begin{align*}
&\vdash \text{indmin}(u) & \vdash \text{maxLindex}(u) \\
&d^l_0 < d^r_0 < d^l_1 < d^r_1 < d^l_2 < d^r_2 < \cdots < d^l_s < d^r_s \\
&d^l_0 + 1 \quad d^r_0 + 1 \quad d^l_1 + 1 \quad d^r_s + 1
\end{align*}
$$

Moreover, when $i_j$ is the index of a first-order variable, we have $d^r_j = d^l_j + 2$.

**Lemma 3.4.6.** There exists a formula $awfh_X$ in $1SL2(\rightarrow)$ such that $h \models awfh_X$ iff $h$ is $X$-almost-well-formed.

The proof is left as Exercise 3.1.

Let $h$ be an $X$-almost-well-formed heap for some $\{0\} \subseteq X \subseteq [0, K]$ and $i \in X$. We write $\text{vind}_i(u)$ to denote

$$
L\text{index}(u) \land e\text{index}(u) \land (\exists \, \bar{u} \, llp_i(u) \land \#\bar{u} < \#u) \land (\exists \, \bar{u} \, lrp_i(u) \land \#\bar{u} > \#u)
$$

It characterises indices whose degree is strictly between the degree of some large left $i$-parenthesis and the degree of some large right $i$-parenthesis. We write $\text{degrees}(i, h)$ to denote the set:

$$
\text{degrees}(i, h) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{ \#l \in \mathbb{N} : h \models_{\{u \mapsto l\}} \text{vind}_i(u), \ l \in \mathbb{N} \}.
$$

**Lemma 3.4.7.** Let $h$ be a heap such that $h \models \exists u \, \text{indmin}(u)$ and $i \geq 0$ be such that there are unique locations $lp$ and $rp$ with $h \models_{\{u \mapsto lp\}} 1lp_i(u)$ and $h \models_{\{u \mapsto rp\}} 1rp_i(u)$. For every $l \in \mathbb{N}$, we have $h \models_{\{u \mapsto l\}} \text{vind}_i(u)$ iff $l$ is the index of some entry and $\#lp < \#l < \#rp$.

The proof of Lemma 3.4.7 is left as Exercise 3.2.

The formula $\text{elt}_j(u)$ defined below holds true when $u$ is interpreted as the element of the unique entry attached to the first-order variable $u_j$.

$$
\text{elt}_j(u) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists \, \bar{u} \, (\bar{u} \mapsto u) \land \text{vind}_j(\bar{u})
$$
Then, the translation of $P_i(u_j, u_k)$ can be designed as follows:

$$\exists u \ (\text{elt}_j(u) \land \exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftrightarrow u \land \text{vind}_i(\bar{u})) \land$$

$$\exists u (\#u = \#\bar{u} + 1 \land \text{vind}_i(u) \land \exists \bar{u} (u \leftrightarrow \bar{u} \land \text{elt}_k(\bar{u}))))>.$$  

These definitions take advantage of the fact that there are unique large left and right parentheses for each variable index. Figure 3.7 illustrates the constraints satisfied by the formula when $j < i < k$. From left to right, the figure represents explicitly a left $j$-parenthesis, then a right $j$-parenthesis, then a left $i$-parenthesis, a right $i$-parenthesis and a left $k$-parenthesis, followed finally by a right $k$-parenthesis. Other entries and parentheses are present in the figure, but they are represented by dots in order to focus on the memory cells relevant to evaluate the formula obtained by translation of $P_i(u_j, u_k)$. The degrees of parentheses and entries increase from left to right.

### 3.4.3 Taking care of valuations

Now that we have a way of identifying that part of the heap that encodes our valuation, we turn our attention to encoding the valuation itself. Below, we introduce a condition for a subheap to be “glued” to an existing valuation. We distinguish three cases.

- **A **local 0-valuation** is a heap made of a left 0-parenthesis of degree $d$ and a right 0-parenthesis of degree $d + 1$ only, for some $d \geq 3$.

- Let $i \in [1, K]$ be the index of some first-order variable. A **local $i$-valuation** is a heap made of a left $i$-parenthesis of degree $d$, an entry of degree $d + 1$ and a right $i$-parenthesis of degree $d + 2$ only, for some $d \geq 3$.
Let \( i \in [1, K] \) be the index of some second-order variable. A **local \( i \)-valuation** is a heap \( h \) such that

1. every location \( l \) in \( \text{dom}(h) \) belongs either to a left \( i \)-parenthesis, to a right \( i \)-parenthesis, or to an entry,
2. \( h \) contains a unique left [resp. right] \( i \)-parenthesis,
3. \( \text{min}(\text{indspect}(h)) \) is the degree of some left \( i \)-parenthesis,
4. \( \text{max}(\text{indspect}(h)) \) is the degree of some right \( i \)-parenthesis,
5. \( \text{indspect}(h) \) is of the form below for some \( \alpha \geq 3, \beta \geq 0 \),
   \[
   \{\alpha\} \cup \{\alpha + 3(i - 1) + 1, \alpha + 3(i - 1) + 2 : i \in [1, \beta]\} \cup \{\alpha + 3\beta + 1\}
   \]
   (when \( \beta = 0 \), \( \text{indspect}(h) \) is equal to \( \{\alpha, \alpha + 1\} \)),
6. there are no two distinct indices with the same degree.

Since local \( i \)-valuations are typically heaps that are added to the current heap to encode the interpretation of a variable, it is essential to be able to characterise them by \( 1SL2(\rightarrow) \) formulae. This is the purpose of the result below.

**Lemma 3.4.8.** Let \( i \in [0, K] \). There is a formula \( \text{localval}_i(u) \) in \( 1SL2(\rightarrow) \) such that \( h \models \text{localval}_i(u) \) iff \( h \) is a local \( i \)-valuation and \( f(u) \) is the index of its left \( i \)-parenthesis.

**Proof.** For characterising local 0-valuations, it is sufficient to express the properties below:

1. any location in the domain is on some left or on some right 0-parenthesis,
2. there is exactly one left 0-parenthesis whose index is \( f(u) \),
3. there is exactly one right 0-parenthesis,
4. \( \tilde{\#}l = \#f(u) + 1 \) where \( l \) is the index of the unique right 0-parenthesis.

(1)-(4) can be expressed by the formula below:

\[
(\forall u \text{alloc}(u) \rightarrow \text{onpar}_0(u)) \land (\text{lp}_0(u) \land \neg(\exists \bar{u} \text{lp}_0(\bar{u}) \land u \neq \bar{u})) \land \\
(\exists \bar{u} (\text{rp}_0(\bar{u}) \land \neg(\exists u \text{rp}_0(u) \land u \neq \bar{u})) \land (\#\bar{u} = \#u + 1))
\]

Formulae of the form \( \text{lp}_i(u) \) and \( \text{rp}_i(u) \) are provided in the proof of Lemma 3.4.1 whereas formulae of the form \( \text{onpar}_i(u) \) are provided before Lemma 3.4.2.

For characterising local \( i \)-valuations for some first-order variable \( u_i \), it is sufficient to express the properties below:
3.4. EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS

1. any location in the domain is on some left \( i \)-parenthesis, or on some right \( i \)-parenthesis or on some entry,

2. there is exactly one left \( i \)-parenthesis whose index is \( f(u) \),

3. there is exactly one right \( i \)-parenthesis,

4. there is a unique entry, whose degree is \( d \), such that \( \#l = \#f(u) + 2 \) and \( \#f(u) = d - 1 \) where \( l \) is the index of the unique right \( i \)-parenthesis.

(1)-(4) can be expressed by the formula below:

\[
(\forall u \text{ alloc}(u)) \Rightarrow \text{onpar}_i(u) \lor \text{epin}(u) \lor \text{eindex}(u) \wedge \\
(\text{lp}_i(u) \wedge \neg(\exists \bar{u} \text{ lp}_i(u) \wedge u \neq \bar{u})) \wedge (\exists \bar{u} \neg(\exists u \text{ rp}_i(u) \wedge u \neq \bar{u}) \wedge (\#\bar{u} = \#u + 2)) \wedge \\
(\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(\bar{u}) \wedge (\neg\exists u (u \neq \bar{u}) \wedge \text{eindex}(u)) \wedge (\#\bar{u} = \#u + 1))
\]

For characterising local \( i \)-valuations for some second-order variable \( P_i \), it is sufficient to express the properties below:

1. any location in the domain is on some left \( i \)-parenthesis, or on some right \( i \)-parenthesis or on some entry,

2. there is exactly one left \( i \)-parenthesis whose index is \( f(u) \),

3. there is exactly one right \( i \)-parenthesis whose index is the location \( l \),

4. any entry has degree in \([\#f(u) + 1, \#l - 1]\) and its index is the unique one with that degree,

5. \( \#l > \#f(u) \),

6. if \( \#l > \#f(u) + 1 \), then

   1. there is an entry with degree \( \#f(u) + 1 \),
   2. there is an entry with degree \( \#f(u) + 2 \),
   3. if there are entries with respective degree \( d \) and \( d + 1 \), then there is no entry or right \( i \)-parenthesis of degree \( d + 2 \),
   4. if there are entries with respective degree \( d \) and \( d + 1 \) and \( d + 3 < \#l \), then there are entries of respective degree \( d + 3 \) and \( d + 4 \).
\[ (1) - (5) \text{ can be expressed by the formula below:} \]
\[
(\forall u \text{ alloc}(u) \Rightarrow \text{onpar}_i(u) \lor \text{epin}(u) \lor \text{eindex}(u)) \land \\
(1p_i(u) \land \neg(\exists \bar{u} 1p, (u) \land u \neq \bar{u})) \land (\exists \bar{u} (\text{rp}(\bar{u}) \land \neg(\exists u \text{rp}(u) \land u \neq \bar{u}) \land \sharp{u} > \sharp{\bar{u}}))) \\
\forall u \text{ eindex}(u) \Rightarrow \neg(\exists \bar{u} ((\text{eindex}(\bar{u}) \lor 1p, (u) \lor \text{rp}(\bar{u})) \land \sharp{u} = \sharp{\bar{u}}) \\
(\exists \bar{u} \text{ rp}(u) \land (\forall u \text{ eindex}(u) \Rightarrow \sharp{u} < \sharp{\bar{u}} - 1)) \land (\forall \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(\bar{u}) \Rightarrow \sharp{\bar{u}} > \sharp{u}) \\
(6a) - (6d) \text{ can be expressed by the formula below:} \\
(\exists \bar{u} \text{ rp}(u) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} > \sharp{u} + 1) \Rightarrow \\
(\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(u) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 1) \land (\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(u) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 2) \land \\
\forall u (\text{eindex}(u) \land (\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(\bar{u}) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 1)) \Rightarrow \neg(\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(\bar{u}) \lor \text{rp}(\bar{u})) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 2) \land \\
\forall u (\text{eindex}(u) \land (\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(\bar{u}) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 1) \land (\exists \bar{u} \text{ rp}(u) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} > \sharp{u} + 3)) \Rightarrow \\
((\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(u) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 2) \land (\exists \bar{u} \text{ eindex}(u) \land \sharp{\bar{u}} = \sharp{u} + 4)) \\
\text{QED} \]

The definition for \( X \)-almost-well-formed heaps mainly takes care of parentheses. In Definition 3.4.9 constraints on the degrees of large indices are specified.

**Definition 3.4.9.** Let \( X = \{i_0, \ldots, i_s\} \subseteq [0, K] \) with \( 0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_s \). A heap \( h \) is \textbf{\( X \)-well-formed} \( \iff \) the following conditions hold:

1. \( h \) is \( X \)-almost-well-formed,

2. for every \( j \in [1, s] \), if \( i_j \) is the index of a first-order variable, then \( \text{degrees}(i_j, h) \) is a singleton,

3. for every \( j \in [1, s] \), if \( i_j \) is the index of a second-order variable, then \( \text{degrees}(i_j, h) \) is the set below for some \( \alpha_j \geq 3, \beta_j \geq 0 \):

\[
\{\alpha_j + 3(i - 1) + 1, \alpha_j + 3(i - 1) + 2 : i \in [1, \beta_j]\},
\]

4. for every location \( l \) such that \( h \models_{[u \rightarrow l]} \text{Lindex}(u) \), there is no \( l' \neq l \) such that \( h \models_{[u \rightarrow l']} \text{Lindex}(u) \) and \( \#l = \#l' \).

5. If a location has degree greater than the degree of the unique large left 0-parenthesis, then it is a large index.
When \( h \) is \( X \)-well-formed, we write \( h = h_R \uplus h_V \) such that \( \text{dom}(h_V) \) is made of entries and parentheses of degree \( d \geq \#l_0 \) for some \( l_0 \in \mathbb{N} \) such that \( h \models_{[u \rightarrow l_0]} \text{indmin}(u) \) (i.e., \( l_0 \) is the index of the left 0-parenthesis with the maximal degree). By Definition 3.4.9, we have \( \text{spect}(h) = \text{indspect}(h_V) \) and clearly the decomposition is unique since \( l_0 \) is unique.

Again, well-formed heaps can be characterised by formulae in 1SL2\((\rightarrow)\) whose size is linear in \( K \).

**Lemma 3.4.10.** Given \( \{0\} \subseteq X \subseteq [0, K] \), there is a formula \( wfh_X \) in 1SL2\((\rightarrow)\) such that \( h \models wfh_X \) iff \( h \) is \( X \)-well-formed.

**Proof.** We consider the conjunction of the formulae below, each of them deals with one of the four conditions. Condition (1) is obviously taken care by the formula \( awfh_X \) (see the proof of Lemma 3.4.6). Condition (2) is dealt with the formula below:

\[
\bigwedge_{j \in [1,s], \text{FO } i_j} \exists u \ \text{vind}_{i_j}(u)
\]

Note that since the heap is already \( X \)-almost-well-formed, at most one location can satisfy the above existential quantification for each FO variable index \( i_j \). Similarly, Condition (3) is taken care by the formula below (see the proof of Lemma 3.4.8 and more specifically Condition (6) in that proof with indices from second-order variables):

\[
\bigwedge_{j \in [1,s], \text{SO } i_j} (\exists u \ \exists \bar{u} \ 1l_{i_j}(u) \land 1rp_{i_j}(\bar{u}) \land (\#\bar{u} > \#u + 1)) \Rightarrow
\]

\[
\underbrace{[\exists u \ \exists \bar{u} \ 1l_{i_j}(u) \land \text{vind}_{i_j}(\bar{u}) \land \#\bar{u} = \#u + 1]} \land
\]

\[
(b)
\]

\[
\underbrace{(\exists u \ \exists \bar{u} \ 1l_{i_j}(u) \land \text{vind}_{i_j}(\bar{u}) \land \#\bar{u} = \#u + 2)} \land
\]

\[
(c)
\]

\[
\forall u \ (\text{vind}_{i_j}(u) \land (\exists \bar{u} \ \text{vind}_{i_j}(\bar{u}) \land \#\bar{u} = \#u + 1)) \Rightarrow
\]

\[
\underbrace{\neg (\exists \bar{u} \ (\text{vind}_{i_j}(\bar{u}) \lor \text{rp}_{i_j}(\bar{u})) \land \#\bar{u} = \#u + 2)} \land
\]

98
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

\[(d)\]
\[
\forall u \left( \text{vind}_i(u) \land (\exists \overline{u} \text{vind}_i(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} = \#u + 1) \land (\exists \overline{u} \text{lrp}_i(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} > \#u + 3) \right) \Rightarrow
\]
\[
((\exists \overline{u} \text{vind}_i(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} = \#u + 3) \land (\exists \overline{u} \text{vind}_i(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} = \#u + 4))].
\]

The above formula expresses the conditions below, mimicking Condition (6) from the proof of Lemma 3.4.8:

(a) there is an entry with degree \(d^l + 1\) where \(d^l\) is the degree of the unique left \(i_j\)-parenthesis,

(b) there is an entry with degree \(d^l + 2\),

(c) if there are entries with respective degree \(d\) and \(d + 1\) in \(\text{degrees}(i_j, h)\), then there is no entry or right \(i_j\)-parenthesis of degree \(d + 2\) in \(\text{degrees}(i_j, h)\),

(d) if there are entries with respective degree \(d\) and \(d + 1\) in \(\text{degrees}(i_j, h)\) and \(d + 3 < d^r\) where \(d^r\) is the degree of the unique right \(i_j\)-parenthesis, then there are entries of respective degree \(d + 3\) and \(d + 4\) in \(\text{degrees}(i_j, h)\). QED

Condition (4) is expressed as follows by simply internalising the condition in \(\text{1SL2}(\neg)\):

\[
\forall u \text{Index}(u) \Rightarrow \neg(\exists \overline{u} \text{Index}(\overline{u}) \land (u \neq \overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} = \#u).
\]

Condition (5) can be expressed as follows:

\[
\forall u (\exists \overline{u} \text{indmin}(\overline{u}) \land \#u \geq \#\overline{u}) \Rightarrow \text{Index}_X(u).
\]

Let us define formally a valuation from a valuation heap.

**Definition 3.4.11.** Let \(h\) be an \(X\)-well-formed heap for some \(\{0\} \subseteq X \subseteq [0, K]\).

- For every second-order \(i \in X\), we define
  \[
  \Psi_h(P_i) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{ (h_V(l), h_V(l')) : \#l' = \#l + 1, \#l, \#l' \in \text{degrees}(i, h), l, l' \text{ are index locations} \}
  \]

- For every first-order \(i \in X\), \(\Psi_h(u_i) \overset{\text{def}}{=} h_V(l)\) where \(l\) is the unique index location such that \(\#l \in \text{degrees}(i, h)\).

We say that \(\Psi_h\) is the valuation **extracted** from \(h\). \(\forall\)
3.4. EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS

Below, we present an essential technical result stating how heaps can be composed when a new variable needs to be interpreted. The formulae involved to compose the $X$-well-formed heap $h$ and the local $i$-valuation heap $h'$ are directly used in the translation of quantified formulae (see Section 3.4.4). Lemma 3.4.12 is used in the proof of Lemma 3.4.13.

**Lemma 3.4.12 (Composition).** Let $f$ be a valuation, $h$ be an $X$-well-formed heap with $\{0\} \subseteq X \subseteq [0,K]$, $i \in [1,K] \setminus X$ with $i > \text{max}(X)$, and $h'$ be a disjoint heap such that:

(I) $h \models \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(\overline{u})$,

(II) $h' \models \text{localval}_i(\overline{u})$,

(III) $h \cup h' \models \text{wfh}_{X \cup \{i\}} \land \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{llp}_i(\overline{u})$.

Then, $\text{spect}(h \cup h') = \text{spect}(h) \cup \text{indspect}(h')$.

Roughly speaking, Lemma 3.4.12 states that given an $X$-well-formed heap $h$, adding a disjoint local $i$-valuation $h'$ with $i \notin X$, leads to an $(X \cup \{i\})$-well-formed heap so that the interpretation of variables with variable indices in $X$ from the extracted valuation, is the same with $h$ and with $h \cup h'$. The heap $h'$ can be then understood as a conservative extension of the heap $h$.

The proof of Lemma 3.4.12 is quite combinatorial and this is the place where we check that the original heap cannot be confused with the valuation heap (and the other way around). It is important to guarantee, as the proof does, that adding a new part of the valuation does not destroy what has been built so far.

### 3.4.4 A reduction from DSOL into 1SL2(−∗)

Below, we define a translation from a sentence $\varphi$ in 1DSOL into a sentence in 1SL2(−∗) that uses only logarithmic space. Without any loss of generality, we assume that

1. two occurrences of quantified variables in $\varphi$ have distinct variable indices (e.g., $P_4$ and $u_4$ cannot both occur in $\varphi$ and “$\forall u_4$” cannot occur more than once) and

2. if $\exists u_i \psi_1$ is a subformula of $\exists u_j \psi_2$, then $i > j$ and this holds for any combination of first-order/second-order variables.
CHAPTER 3. EXPRESSIVENESS OF SEPARATION LOGICS

At the outset, we may rename variables so that these simple conditions are satisfied. We assume that the variable indices for (first-order or second-order) variables are among $[1, K]$.

The translation of the formula $\varphi$, written $T(\varphi)$, first applies a top-level translation $t_{\text{top}}(\cdot)$ which takes care of initialising the valuation heap; then, a recursive map $t(\cdot)$ is applied. So, $T(\varphi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} t_{\text{top}}(\varphi)$ where $t_{\text{top}}(\varphi)$ is defined as follows:

\[
t_{\text{top}}(\varphi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \ isoloc(u) \land (\text{localval}_0(u) \hookrightarrow (\text{wfh}_0) \land \text{indmin}(u) \land (\forall \overline{u} ((u \neq \overline{u}) \land \neg \text{lrp}_0(\overline{u})) \Rightarrow (\#\overline{u} < \#u) \land t([0], \varphi)))
\]

The first step of the translation consists in adding 0-parentheses so that the heap that evaluates $t([0], \varphi)$ is 0-well-formed. The translation map $t(\cdot)$ has two arguments: the formula to be transformed and the set of variable indices for variables that have been quantified so far. The map $t(\cdot)$ is inductively defined as follows ($X \subseteq [0, K]$, $\psi$ subformula of $\varphi$) and it is homomorphic for Boolean connectives:

\[
\begin{align*}
t(X, u_i = u_j) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \ elt_i(u) \land elt_j(u) \\
t(X, u_i \leftarrow u_j) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \exists \overline{u} \ (elt_i(u) \land elt_j(\overline{u}) \land u \leftarrow \overline{u}) \\
t(X, P_i(u_j, u_k)) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \ (elt_i(u) \land \exists \overline{u} \ (\overline{u} \leftarrow u \land \text{vind}_i(\overline{u}) \land \exists u \ (\#u = \#\overline{u} + 1 \land \text{vind}_i(u) \land \exists \overline{u} \ (u \leftarrow \overline{u} \land elt_k(\overline{u})))) \\
t(X, \exists u_i \ \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \exists \overline{u} \ ((\text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(\overline{u})) \land (\text{localval}_i(\overline{u}) \hookrightarrow (\text{wfh}_{X[i]}(u) \land \text{indmin}(u) \land 1lp_i(\overline{u}) \land t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi)))) \\
t(X, \exists P_i \ \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u \exists \overline{u} \ ((\text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(\overline{u})) \land (\text{localval}_i(\overline{u}) \hookrightarrow (\text{wfh}_{X[i]}(u) \land \text{indmin}(u) \land 1lp_i(\overline{u}) \land t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi))))
\end{align*}
\]

Every subformula $t(X, \psi)$ has no free variable from $\text{free}(\psi) \subseteq X$ where $\text{free}(\psi)$ denotes the set of variable indices in $\psi$ from either first-order or second-order free variables.

Below, we state the correctness lemma that allows us to get Theorem 3.4.14 (the proof is by structural induction).

**Lemma 3.4.13 (Correctness).** Let $\varphi$ be a DSOL sentence of the above form, $\psi$ be one of its subformulae and $(\text{free}(\psi) \cup \{0\}) \subseteq X \subseteq [0, K]$. Let $\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{h}_B \uplus \mathfrak{h}_V$ be a $X$-well-formed heap and $\mathfrak{V}_0$ be the valuation extracted from $\mathfrak{h}$. Then, $\mathfrak{h}_B \models_{\mathfrak{V}_0} \psi$ iff $\mathfrak{h} \models t(X, \psi)$.
3.4. EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS

**Proof.** The proof is by structural induction.

**Base case 1:** $\psi$ is equal to $u_i = u_j$.

Since $h$ is X-well-formed and $i, j \in X$, $B_h(u_i)$ is equal to $h_V(l)$ where $l$ is the unique index location such that $\#l \in degrees(i, h)$. Similarly, $B_h(u_j)$ is equal to $h_V(l')$ where $l'$ is the unique index location such that $\#l' \in degrees(j, h)$. Uniqueness is a consequence of Definition 3.4.9(2).

Let us recall that $\text{elt}(u) = \exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftrightarrow u) \land \text{vind}(\bar{u})$ with $\text{vind}(\bar{u}) = \text{Lindex}(u) \land \text{eindex}(u) \land (\exists \bar{u} \lambda \bar{u} \land \#\bar{u} < \#u) \land (\exists \bar{u} \lambda \bar{u} \land \#\bar{u} > \#u)$. Similarly, $\text{elt}(u) = \exists \bar{u} (\bar{u} \leftrightarrow u) \land \text{vind}(\bar{u})$.

First, let us suppose that $h_B \models\forall_u u_i = u_j$. This means that $B_h(u_i)$ and $B_h(u_j)$ are equal, say to $l'$ and therefore there is a unique index location $l$ such that $h_V(l) = l'$ and $\#l \in degrees(i, h)$. Moreover, there is a unique index location $l_j$ such that $h_V(l_j) = l'$ and $\#l_j \in degrees(j, h)$. Since $\#l_j \in indicesp(h)$, the locations $l$ and $l_j$, have the same number of predecessors in $h$ and in $h_V$ and they are also indices in $h$ (see Lemma 3.4.12). Consequently, $h \models [u \mapsto u'] \text{elt}(u) \land \text{elt}(u)$ (see also Lemma 3.4.7), whence $h \models \exists u \text{elt}(u) \land \text{elt}(u)$.

Now suppose that $h \models \exists u \text{elt}(u) \land \text{elt}(u)$. There is a location $l'$ such that $h \models [u \mapsto u'] \text{elt}(u) \land \text{elt}(u)$. Therefore there are index locations $l_i$ and $l_j$ such that $\#l_i \in degrees(i, h)$, $\#l_j \in degrees(j, h)$, $h(l_i) = l'$ and $h(l_j) = l'$. By Lemma 3.4.12, $h_V(l_i) = l'$, $\#l_i \in indicesp(h_V)$, $h_V(l_j) = l'$ and $\#l_j \in indicesp(h_V)$. By definition of $B_h$ (see Definition 3.4.11), this implies that $B_h(u_i) = B_h(u_j)$ and therefore $h_B \models\forall_u u_i = u_j$.

**Base case 2:** $\psi$ is equal to $u_i \mapsto u_j$.

Again, since $h$ is X-well-formed and $i, j \in X$, $B_h(u_i)$ is equal to $h_V(l)$ where $l$ is the unique location such that $\#l \in degrees(i, h)$. Similarly, $B_h(u_j)$ is equal to $h_V(l)$ where $l$ is the unique location such that $\#l \in degrees(j, h)$.

First, let us suppose that $h_B \models\forall_u u_i \mapsto u_j$. This means that $h_B(B_h(u_i)) = B_h(u_j)$, and there is a unique location $l$ such that $h_V(l) = B_h(u_i)$ and $\#l \in degrees(i, h)$. There is also a unique location $l_j$ such that $h_V(l_j) = B_h(u_j)$ and $\#l_j \in degrees(j, h)$. Since $\#l_j$ and $\#l_j$ belong to the index spectrum of $h_V$, the locations $l_i$ and $l_j$, have the same number of predecessors in $h$ and in $h_V$ and they are also indices in $h$ (see Lemma 3.4.12). There are index locations $l', l''$ such that $h \models [u \mapsto l', u'' \mapsto l''] \text{elt}(u) \land \text{elt}(u') \land u \mapsto \bar{u}$. Note that $h_B(B_h(u_j)) = B_h(u_j)$ implies $h(B_h(u_j)) = B_h(u_j)$ since $h_B$ is a subheap of $h$. Consequently,
Similarly, there are index locations \( l_i \) and \( l_j \) such that \( \#l_i \in \text{degrees}(i, h) \), \( \#l_j \in \text{degrees}(j, h) \), \( h(l_i) = l' \), \( h(l_j) = l'' \) and of course \( h(l') = l'' \). By Lemma 3.4.12 and since \( \text{indspect}(h_V) = \text{spect}(h) \), \( h_V(l_i) = l' \), \( \#l_i \in \text{indspect}(h_V) \), \( h_V(l_j) = l'' \) and \( \#l_j \in \text{indspect}(h_V) \). By construction of \( B_h \) (see Definition 3.4.11), this implies that \( h(B_h(u_i)) = B_h(u_j) \) and therefore \( b \models B_h u_i \leftrightarrow u_j \). Note that \( B_h(u_i) \notin \text{dom}(h_V) \) since \( h \) is X-well-formed.

**Base case 3:** \( \psi \) is equal to \( P_i(u_i, u_k) \).
Suppose that \( b \models B_h P_i(u_i, u_k) \). By definition of the satisfaction relation \( \models \), this is equivalent to \( (B_h(u_i), B_h(u_k)) \in B_h(P_i) \). By definition of \( B_h \), \( B_h(u_i) \) is equal to \( h_V(l_i) \) where \( l_i \) is the unique index location such that \( \#l_i \in \text{degrees}(j, h) \). Similarly, \( B_h(u_k) \) is equal to \( h_V(l_k) \) where \( l_k \) is the unique index location such that \( \#l_k \in \text{degrees}(k, h) \). So, \( b \models [u \mapsto l_i] \text{vind}_i(u) \) and \( b \models [u \mapsto l_k] \text{vind}_k(u) \). Moreover, by definition of \( B_h \), there are index locations \( l \) and \( l' \) such that

1. \( \#l' = \#l_i + 1 \),
2. \( \#l, \#l' \in \text{degrees}(i, h) \),
3. \( h(l) = B_h(u_i) \) and \( h(l') = B_h(u_k) \),
4. \( b \models [u \mapsto l] \text{vind}_i(u) \) and \( b \models [u \mapsto l'] \text{vind}_j(u) \).

Finally, the formulae \( \text{elt}_i(u) \) and \( \text{elt}_k(u) \) are defined so that \( b \models [u \mapsto B_h(u_i)] \text{elt}_i(u) \) and \( b \models [u \mapsto B_h(u_k)] \text{elt}_k(u) \). So, we have

- \( l_i \rightarrow B_h(u_i) \),
- \( \#l' = \#l_i + 1 \),
- \( l' \rightarrow B_h(u_k) \).

This guarantees the satisfaction of

\[
 b \models \exists u \left( \text{elt}_i(u) \wedge \exists \overline{u} \left( \overline{u} \leftrightarrow u \wedge \text{vind}_i(u) \right) \right)
\]
\[ 3.4. \text{EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS} \]

\[ \exists u \left( \#u = \#u + 1 \land \text{vind}(u) \land \exists \bar{u} \left( u \leftrightarrow \bar{u} \land \text{elt}_{t}(\bar{u}) \right) \right) \]

The proof in the other direction is by an easy verification and similar since all of the above implications are indeed equivalences.

\textbf{Induction step.} The induction hypothesis is the following: for every subformula \( \psi' \) of size strictly less than the size of \( \psi \), for every \( \text{free}(\psi') \subseteq X' \subseteq [0, K] \), we have \( h_B \models_{\psi_b} \psi' \) if and only if \( h \models t(X', \psi') \). The cases when the outermost connective is Boolean are by an easy verification.

\textit{Case 1:} \( \psi \) is equal to \( \exists u_i \psi' \). Suppose that \( h_B \models_{\psi_b} \exists u_i \psi' \). By definition of the satisfaction relation \( \models \), there is \( l \in \mathbb{N} \) such that \( h_B \models_{\psi_b[i \mapsto l]} \psi' \). In case \( l \) belongs to the set \( Y \) defined below,

\[ Y = \text{dom}(h_V) \cup \{ l \in \mathbb{N} : h \models_{[u \mapsto l]} \bigvee_{j \in X'} (\text{llp}_j(u) \lor \text{lrl}_j(u)) \} \]

(and therefore \( l \) is an isolated location in \( h_B \)), we pick another location \( l' \) that does not belong to \( Y \) and that is also isolated in \( h_B \). It is then easy to show that \( h_B \models_{\psi_b[i \mapsto l']} \psi' \) if \( h_B \models_{\psi_b[i \mapsto l']} \psi' \). So, without any loss of generality, below we assume that \( l \) does not belong to \( Y \).

Let us build \( h'_V \) and an assignment \( \dagger \) such that:

1. \( h'_V \models_{\dagger} \text{localval}_l(\bar{u}) \),
2. \( h \models_{\dagger} \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(\bar{u}) \),
3. \( h \not\models_{\dagger} h'_V \models_{\dagger} \text{wfh}_{X \cup \{i\}} \land \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{llp}_l(\bar{u}) \).

Assume that \( \text{max}(X) = j \) and \( m \) be the degree of the right \( j \)-parenthesis with greatest degree. It is easy to define a local \( i \)-valuation \( h'_V \) disjoint from \( h \) such that the degree of the left \( i \)-parenthesis is \( m + 1 \), the degree of the right \( i \)-parenthesis is \( m + 3 \), the degree of the unique entry is \( m + 2 \), its element is precisely \( l \) and all the locations in its domain are isolated in \( h \) (always possible since \( \text{dom}(h) \cup \text{ran}(h) \) is finite).

It is not difficult to check that \( h'_V \) and \( \dagger \) satisfy the above conditions. Since \( h \not\models_{\dagger} h'_V \), \( (X \cup \{i\}) \)-well-formed by construction, by Lemma 3.4.12, we have \( \forall u \left[ u_i \mapsto l \right] \) equal to \( \forall u \not\models_{\dagger} \). Hence, \( h_B \models_{\psi_b[i \mapsto l]} \psi' \) and by the induction hypothesis, we get \( h \not\models_{\dagger} h'_V \models_{\dagger} t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi') \). However, it is easy to conclude then that \( h \models t(X, \psi') \).

Indeed, \( h \) satisfies the formula below

\[ \exists u \exists \bar{u} \left( \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(\bar{u}) \land (\text{localval}_l(\bar{u}) \dagger) \right) \]
Whenever there are locations $l^*$ and $l^{**}$ and a disjoint heap $h^*$ such that:

1. $l^*$ is the unique large 0-parenthesis in $h$ and $l^{**}$ is isolated in $h$,
2. $h^*$ is an $i$-local valuation such that the index of the left $i$-parenthesis is $l^{**}$, $h \uplus h^*$ is $(X \cup \{i\})$-well-formed,
3. $l^*$ is the left 0-parenthesis in $h \uplus h^*$ and $l^{**}$ is the left $i$-parenthesis in $h \uplus h^*$,
4. $h \uplus h^* \models_{\lfloor u \mapsto l^*, l^{**} \mapsto \cdot \rfloor} t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi)$.

It is clear that such objects exist by considering the above construction.

The proof in the other direction (i.e. $h \models t(X, \psi)$ implies $h_B \models \exists u. \psi$) is actually very similar since most of the above implications are indeed equivalences.

**Case 2:** $\psi$ is equal to $\exists P. \psi'$. Suppose that $h_B \models \exists h. \exists P. \psi'$. By definition of the satisfaction relation $\models$, there is a finite binary relation $R \subseteq \mathbb{N}^2$ such that $h_B \models_{\exists [P \mapsto R]} \psi'$. In case $R$ involves locations in $Y$ defined below,

$$Y = \text{dom}(h_V) \cup \{l \in \mathbb{N} : h \models_{\lfloor \omega \mapsto l \rfloor} \bigvee_{j \in X} (1lp_j(u) \lor 1rp_j(u))\}$$

(and therefore $R$ involves some isolated locations in $h_B$), we pick another $R'$ (of same cardinality $\beta$) that does not involve locations in $Y$. It is then easy to show that $h_B \models_{\exists [P \mapsto R']} \psi' \iff h_B \models_{\exists [P \mapsto R]} \psi'$. So, without any loss of generality, below we assume that $R$ does not involve locations in $Y$ (see also [BDL12, Lemma 2.1]).

Let us build $h_V^i$ and an assignment $\bar{t}$ such that:

1. $h_V^i \models_{\bar{t}} \text{localval}_i(u)$,
2. $h \models_{\bar{t}} \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(u)$,
3. $h \uplus h_V^i \models_{\bar{t}} \text{wfh}_{X \cup \{i\}} \land \text{indmin}(u) \land 1lp_i(u)$.

Assume that $\text{max}(X) = j$ and $m$ be the degree of the right $j$-parenthesis with greatest degree. It is easy to define a local $i$-valuation $h_V^i$ disjoint from $h$ such that:

1. the degree of the left $i$-parenthesis is $m + 1$,
2. the degree of the right $i$-parenthesis is $(m + 1) + 3\beta + 1$ for some $\beta \geq 0$,
3.4. EXPRESSIVE COMPLETENESS

3. there are $2\beta$ entries,

4. for every pair $(l, l')$ in $R$, there are two entries of consecutive degrees whose elements are $l$ and $l'$ respectively.

This is always possible since $\text{dom}(h) \cup \text{ran}(h)$ and $R$ are finite.

It is not difficult to check that $h \cup h^{i}$, and $f$ satisfy the above conditions. Since $h \cup h^{i}$ is $(X \cup \{i\})$-well-formed by construction, by Lemma 3.4.12 we have $\mathcal{B}_{h}[P_{i} \mapsto R]$ equal to $\mathcal{B}_{\text{bool}}$. Hence, $h_{E} \models_{\text{bool}} \psi'$ and by the induction hypothesis, we get $h \cup h^{i} \models t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi')$. However, it is easy to conclude then that $h \models t(X, \psi')$. Indeed, $h$ satisfies the formula below

$$\exists u \exists \bar{u} (\text{indmin}(u) \land \text{isoloc}(\bar{u}) \land (\text{localval}_{l}(\bar{u}) \Rightarrow \left(\text{wf}_{X \cup \{i\}} \land \text{indmin}(u) \land \text{lp}_{u}(\bar{u}) \land t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi))\right))$$

whenever there are locations $l^{*}$ and $l^{**}$ and a disjoint heap $h^{*}$ such that:

1. $l^{*}$ is the unique large 0-parenthesis in $h$ and $l^{**}$ is isolated in $h$,

2. $h^{*}$ is an $i$-local valuation such that the index of the left $i$-parenthesis is $l^{**}$, $h \cup h^{*}$ is $(X \cup \{i\})$-well-formed,

3. $l^{*}$ is the left 0-parenthesis in $h \cup h^{*}$ and $l^{**}$ is the left $i$-parenthesis in $h \cup h^{*}$,

4. $h \cup h^{*} \models \left[\exists u \exists \bar{u}, \exists -i^{*}, l^{*}, l^{**} \right] t(X \cup \{i\}, \psi)$.

It is clear that such objects exist by considering the above construction.

The proof in the other direction (i.e. $h \models t(X, \psi)$) implies $h_{E} \models_{h_{E}} \exists P_{i} \psi'$) is actually very similar since most of the above implications are indeed equivalences.

QED

Here is the major expressiveness result.

**Theorem 3.4.14.** For every sentence $\varphi$ in 1DSOL, for every heap $h$, we have $h \models \varphi$ iff $h \models T(\varphi)$, so WSOL and 1SL2($\rightarrow$) have the same expressive power.

The proof of Theorem 3.4.14 is left as Exercise 3.3.

Observe that $T(\varphi)$ can be computed in logarithmic space in the size of $\varphi$ (to do this, one must also check the size of all the formulae built in the previous proofs). So, the restriction to two variables in 1SL2($\rightarrow$) does not reduce the expressive power, unlike restrictions in [Ven91] [EVW97] but we know also other
logics restricted to two variables that are expressively complete, see e.g. [LSW01, MdR05].

We get the ultimate undecidability result below (no separating conjunction, two quantified variables, one record field).

**Corollary 3.4.15.** [DD14] The satisfiability problem for 1SL2(−*) is undecidable.

The absence of program variables in the logic 1SL2(−*) makes the proof of Corollary 3.4.15 even more difficult to design, which is perfect to obtain the sharpest undecidability result. An expressiveness result with program variables is possible and it is left as Exercise 3.6.

**Theorem 3.4.16.** The set of valid formulae in 1SL2(−*) is not recursively enumerable.

Indeed, finitary validity for classical predicate logic restricted to a single binary predicate is not recursively enumerable, which implies a similar property for DSOL and therefore for 1SL2(−*) by Theorem 3.4.14.

A quick argument for proving Theorem 3.4.16 consists in noting that second-order logic is not finitely axiomatizable and 1SL2(−*) is equivalent to it, but this would be too sloppy since there are so many variants of second-order logic, and some of them are indeed finitely axiomatizable. In order to be more precise and to show Theorem 3.4.16, a more direct proof consists in combining the following arguments.

- First-order theory of natural numbers with addition and multiplication is not recursively enumerable by Gödel’s first incompleteness theorem.

- There is a logarithmic-space reduction $tr_1$ such that for any formula $\varphi$ from first-order arithmetic, $\varphi$ is valid iff $tr_1(\varphi)$ is valid in 1WSOL. To show this, it is sufficient to represent natural numbers by the cardinals of finite sets and to deal with addition and multiplication by performing equality tests between finite set cardinalities. This can be done by using dyadic or ternary predicate symbols, for instance to state the existence of some bijection between two finite sets (see Theorem 1.3.2). By way of example, the atomic formula $u_1 \times u_2 = u_3$ amounts to check whether the product set made of the interpretation of the monadic second-order variables $P_1$ and $P_2$ has the same cardinality as the interpretation of the monadic second-order variable $P_3$. Obviously, this assumes that each variable $u_i$ has a unique corresponding monadic second-order variable $P_i$. So the formula $u_1 \times u_2 = u_3$ can be encoded by:

$$\exists P \text{ PRODUCT}(P, P_1 \times P_2) \land \text{ EQCARD}(P, P_3)$$
where \( \text{PRODUCT}(P, P_1 \times P_2) \) \( \overset{def}{=} \forall u, u' P(u, u') \Leftrightarrow P_1(u) \land P_2(u') \). The formula \( \text{EQCARD}(P, P_3) \) stating that the interpretation of the binary second-order variable has the same cardinality as the interpretation of the unary second-order variable can be defined similarly, but this requires to introduce a ternary second-order variable specified as a bijection between the two sets.

### 3.5 Exercises

**Exercise 3.1.** Prove Lemma \([3.4.6]\).

**Exercise 3.2.** Prove Lemma \([3.4.7]\).

**Exercise 3.3.** Prove Theorem \([3.4.14]\).

**Exercise 3.4.** Let \(1SL^\infty\) be the variant of \(1SL\) in which the heap domain can be either finite or infinite (in \(1SL\), the heap domain is necessarily finite).

a) Show that the set of valid formulae for \(1SL^\infty\) without separating connectives is recursively enumerable.

b) Define a formula \( \text{seg} \) in \(1SL^\infty\) that characterises the segmented heaps, i.e. those heaps \( h \) such that \( \text{dom}(h) \cap \text{ran}(h) = \emptyset \) and no location has strictly more than one predecessor.

c) Show that for any heap for \(1SL^\infty\), \( \text{dom}(h) \) is infinite iff \( h \) satisfies \( \text{seg} \Rightarrow \forall u \ \text{alloc}(u) \).

d) Conclude that \(1SL^\infty\) (with separating connectives) does not admit a recursively enumerable set of valid formulae.

**Exercise 3.5.**

a) Define a formula in \(1SL^2\) that states that the number of predecessors of \( u \) with zero predecessor is at least 2.

b) Define a formula \( \text{allzpred}(u) \) in \(1SL^2(\leftarrow)\) that holds true exactly when all the predecessors of \( u \) have no predecessor.

c) Define a formula \( (\#_{z}u = 0) \) in \(1SL^2(\leftarrow)\) that holds true exactly when all the predecessors of \( u \) have at least one predecessor.
d) Define a formula \( \text{size} = 1 \) in 1SL2(\(\rightarrow\)) that holds true exactly when the heap domain has exactly one location (the separating implication \(\rightarrow\) is not even needed).

e) Assuming that \(\varphi\) characterises the heaps such that the number of predecessors of \(u\) that have no predecessor is at most \(k-1\), define a formula that characterises the heaps such that the number of predecessors of \(u\) that have no predecessor is at most \(k\) (by using \(\text{size} = 1\), \(\varphi\) and the septraction operator).

f) Show that for all \(\triangleright\in\{\leq, \geq, <, >\}\) and \(k \geq 2\), there is a formula in 1SL2(\(\rightarrow\)) that holds true exactly that the number \(n\) of predecessors of \(u\) that have no predecessor verifies \(n \triangleright k\).

**Exercise 3.6.** Extend the translation provided in Section 3.4 to deal with program variables.

### 3.6 Bibliographical References on Expressiveness

**Expressive completeness.** The literature is rich with results comparing the expressive power of non-classical logics with most standard logics such as first- or second-order logic. For instance, the celebrated Kamp’s Theorem [Kam68, Rab14] amounts to stating that linear-time temporal logic (LTL) is equal in expressive power to first-order logic. More generally, we know the expressive completeness of Stavi connectives for general linear time, see e.g. [GHR94]. This has been refined to the restriction to two variables, leading to the equivalence between unary LTL and FO2, see e.g. [EVW97, Wei11]. Monadic second-order logic (MSO) is another yardstick logic and, for instance, it is well-known that \(\omega\)-regular languages (those definable by Büchi automata) are exactly those definable in MSO, see e.g. [Str94]. Similarly, extended temporal logic ETL, defined in [Wol83] and extending LTL, is also known to be equally expressive with MSO. This applies also to linear \(\mu\)-calculus [Var88] or to PSL [Lan07], to quote a few more examples. On non-linear structures, bisimulation invariant fragment of MSO and modal \(\mu\)-calculus have been shown equivalent [JW96]. In addition, there is a wealth of results relating first-order logic with two variables and non-classical logics, providing a neat characterisation of the expressive power of many formalisms since first-order logic and second-order logic are queen logics. For instance, Boolean modal logic with converse and identity is as expressive as first-order logic with two quantified variables (FO2) [LSW01]. Sometimes, a
third variable is needed to get expressive completeness. For instance, in [Ven91] it is proved that interval logic with connectives Chop, D and T is expressively complete over linear flows of time with respect to first-order logic restricted to three quantified variables. In the realm of interval temporal logics, we also know expressive completeness of metric propositional neighborhood logic with respect to the two-variable fragment of first-order logic for linear orders with successor function, interpreted over natural numbers [BDG+10].

Expressiveness of separation logics It is known since [COY01] that first-order separation logic with two record fields (herein called 2SL) is undecidable (see also Section 1.3.4) and this is sharpened in [BDL12] by showing that 1SL is also undecidable, as a consequence of the expressive equivalence between 1SL and weak second-order logic. More recently, 1SL restricted to two variables (1SL2) is shown undecidable too [DD15] (see Section 3.3). From the very beginning, the relationships between separation logic and second-order logic have been quite puzzling (see e.g. an interesting answer with infinite arbitrary structures in [KR04]). Moreover, comparisons of fragments have been also studied, for instance 1SL(*) has been established strictly less expressive than MSO in [AD09] (see also the related work [Mar06] or Section 4.4). So, in this chapter, we have shown that first-order separation logic with one record field, two quantified variables, and no separating conjunction is as expressive as weak second-order logic on heaps; in short, 1SL2(−*) ≡ 1WSOL [DD14]. Because we forbid ourselves the use of many syntactic resources, this underlines even further the power of the magic wand. By way of comparison with [GOR99, IRR+04], we show undecidability of a two-variable logic with second-order features. Our main undecidability result cannot be derived from [GOR99, IRR+04] since in 1SL models, we deal with a single functional binary relation, namely the finite heap.
## Chapter 4

**RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.1 Data Logics</strong></td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.1 Separation logic with data</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.2 Undecidability for separation logic with data</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.3 A decidable fragment</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.4 First-order data logics</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.2 Interval Temporal Logics</strong></td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.1 The logic PITL</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.2 A correspondence between words and heaps</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.3 A reduction and its three ways to chop</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.3 Modal Logics</strong></td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.1 A modal logic for heaps</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.2 A refinement with the modal fragment of $1SL2(\ast)$</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.4 Monadic Second-Order Logic</strong></td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.5 Exercises</strong></td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this chapter, we investigate further how to reduce the satisfiability problem for non-classical logics into similar problems for separation logics. In Section 4.1, we introduce several versions of separation logics with data values and we show undecidability by reduction from the satisfiability problem for Freeze LTL. In that section, we also explain how to obtain undecidability of 1SL2 by reducing first-order logics on data words; this provides an alternative undecidability
4.1. DATA LOGICS

proof for 1SL2 (see also Section 3.3). Section 4.2 is dedicated to interval temporal logic PITL and we establish that the satisfiability problem for 1SL2(\textast) is non-elementary by reduction from the satisfiability problem for PITL. Section 4.3 introduces a modal logic for heaps MLH and shows the decidability of MLH(\textast) by translation into 1SL2(\textast) by using a translation similar to the one from the modal logic K into FO2. The non-elementarity of the satisfiability problem for MLH(\textast) is also established. Section 4.4 is about the decidability status of 1MSOL and 1SL(\textast) and their difference of expressiveness. 1SL(\textast) is an important fragment to consider—and an important one to show decidable—as some verification applications do not require the use of the separating implication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Highlights of the chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The satisfiability problem for the logic 1SL3(\textast)[\mathbb{Z},=] with data values in \mathbb{Z} is undecidable (Theorem 4.1.1) \cite{BBL09}. The proof is obtained by reducing an undecidable version of linear-time temporal logic LTL with the freeze operator \cite{FS09}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The satisfiability problem for 1SL2(\textast) has non-elementary complexity (Theorem 4.2.7). This is shown by reduction from propositional interval temporal logic with the locality condition \cite{DD15b}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1 Data Logics

4.1.1 Separation logic with data

In memory states defined in Section 1.2.1, heaps are of the form \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N}^k when k record fields are involved. No record field is really distinguished and the logic \textit{kSL} mainly allows to reason about the shape properties of the heap (and not so much on functional correctness). However, it is often important to be able to reason about data values, a typical example would be to consider programs that produce sorted lists. In that case, we would like to specify that the values occurring in a list are linearly ordered. Pointer arithmetic is another means to reason about data values when the set of locations (herein, represented by the set \mathbb{N}) is equipped with relations other than equality. Even though it is well-known that adding data domains easily leads to undecidable logics, see e.g. \cite{DD07,BMS06}, there exist several successful examples of logics able to reason about heap structures and data values, while having decidable reasoning tasks, see e.g. \cite{BHJS07,BBL09}.
CHAPTER 4. RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS

Reasoning about data values mainly means to be able to distinguish at least one record field dedicated to data values and to express data constraints in the formulae. That is why, in full generality, data domains need to be introduced in the semantics.

A data domain is a pair \( (\mathcal{D}, (\mathcal{R}_i)_{i \in I}) \) where \( \mathcal{D} \) is a non-empty set, \( I \) is an index set and each \( \mathcal{R}_i \) is a relation of arity \( a(i) \) on \( \mathcal{D} \), that is, it is a subset of \( \mathcal{D}^{a(i)} \). A typical example of data domain is \( (\mathbb{Z}, <, =) \). The index set \( I \) is not necessarily finite and below, we assume that \( \mathcal{D} \) is infinite and the family \( (\mathcal{R}_i)_{i \in I} \) contains the diagonal relation on \( \mathcal{D} \) so that equality tests between data values can be expressed in the logic. Indeed, this makes the data domain all the more interesting and non-trivial. A memory state with data (with respect to the data domain \( (\mathcal{D}, (\mathcal{R}_i)_{i \in I}) \)) is a triple \( (\mathcal{s}, \mathcal{h}, \mathcal{d}) \) such that \( (\mathcal{s}, \mathcal{h}) \) is a memory state and \( \mathcal{d} \) is a partial function \( \mathbb{N} \rightharpoonup \mathcal{D} \). Below, we also assume that \( \text{dom}(\mathcal{h}) = \text{dom}(\mathcal{d}) \) in order to have correspondences between partial functions of the form \( \mathbb{N} \rightharpoonup \mathcal{D} \times \mathbb{N}^k \) (the first record field is therefore dedicated to data values) and pairs of the form \( (\mathcal{h}, \mathcal{d}) \) when \( \mathcal{h} \) is a heap with \( k \) record fields. This is analogous to what is defined in \[BBL09\], a pioneering work for separation logic with data values but other options are possible, even though not investigated below.

The logic \( k\text{SL}[\mathcal{D}, (\mathcal{R}_i)_{i \in I}] \) is defined as \( k\text{SL} \) except that atomic formulae of the form \( R_\mathcal{R}_i(e_1, \ldots, e_{a(i)}) \) are added for each \( i \in I \) and the models are memory states with data with respect to \( (\mathcal{D}, (\mathcal{R}_i)_{i \in I}) \). In order to avoid confusion with equality between locations (by contrast to equality between their data values, if any), we write \( e \sim e' \) to denote the equality formula between two data values, following a similar convention from \[BMS+06\]. For instance, linear ordered data domains have been considered in \[DD07, ST11\] with LTL-like logics or in \[BBL09\] with separation logic where \( 1\text{SL}[\mathbb{Z}, \leq, =] \) has been investigated. The satisfaction relation is extended in order to cope with the new atomic formulae:

- \( (s, h, d) \models R_\mathcal{R}_i(e_1, \ldots, e_{a(i)}) \iff \mathcal{d}(\llbracket e_1 \rrbracket), \ldots, \mathcal{d}(\llbracket e_{a(i)} \rrbracket) \) are defined and
  \[ R_\mathcal{R}_i(\mathcal{d}(\llbracket e_1 \rrbracket), \ldots, \mathcal{d}(\llbracket e_{a(i)} \rrbracket)) \]
4.1. DATA LOGICS

atomic formulae about data values can only occur in subformulae of the one of the forms below:

\[ e \leftrightarrow e' \land (e \leq e') \quad e \leftrightarrow e' \land (e' \leq e) \]

As noted in [BBL09], only short-distance comparisons are possible in 1SL*dc and this may allow to specify sorted lists. For example, the formula below specifies that the list between \( x_1 \) and \( x_2 \) (assuming that reach(\( x_1, x_2 \)) \& alloc(\( x_1 \)) \& alloc(\( x_2 \)) holds true) is sorted:

\[ \forall u, u' \ ((\text{reach}(x_1, u) \& \text{reach}(u, u') \& \text{reach}(u', x_2)) \Rightarrow u \leq u') \]

where \( \leq \) is “less than or equal relation” that is definable in the data domain \((\mathbb{Z}, <, =)\).

Other types of logics with data have been considered in the literature. One of the most prominent ones is the logic STRAND introduced [MPQ11] that can state constraints on the heap structures but also on the data. Recursive structures are defined thanks to monadic second-order logic whereas the use of data constraints is significantly limited. The very combination of the two types of properties allow to reason with heap-manipulation programs using deductive verification and SMT solvers, such as Z3 [dMB08]. Another related logic is the one introduced in [BDES09] for which a quite general framework is proposed to reason about heap structures and data values.

4.1.2 Undecidability for separation logic with data

The logic 1SL(\( \ast \)) happens to be decidable (see forthcoming Section 4.4). Below, we show that 1SL3(\( \ast \))\[ \mathbb{Z}, = \], i.e. 1SL3(\( \ast \)) augmented with data values in which only equality tests are possible is undecidable. The definition of 1SL(\( \ast \))\[ \mathbb{Z}, = \] can be found in Section 4.1.1. We provide a reduction from the satisfiability problem for some temporal logic with the freeze operator, see e.g. [DL09, FS09] whereas the original proof in [BBL09] uses a first-order logic on data words.

Below, we only consider data words of dimension 0. In Section 3.1, we have seen that there is a formula \( \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \) such that \( \mathcal{h} \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \) iff \( \mathcal{h} \) is an \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone. Let us consider a subclass of \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heaps so that the main path has at least two locations. We write \( \text{dw}'(\alpha, 0) \) to denote the formulae characterizing such heaps. There is also a formula \( \text{mp}(u) \) in 1SL2(\( \ast \)) such that for any \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heap \( \mathcal{h} \) with the above definition, \( \mathcal{h} \models \text{mp}(u) \) iff \( \mathcal{f}(u) \) is on the main path and it has exactly one predecessor.
CHAPTER 4. RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS

Now, let us show that the satisfiability problem for 1SL3(\(\ast\))[\(\;\mathbb{Z},=\)] is undecidable by designing a reduction from an undecidable logic whose models are data words. We have already explained how 1SL3(\(\ast\))[\(\;\mathbb{Z},=\)] can encode data words.

As mentioned earlier, there exist many formalisms to specify properties about data words; among them can be found temporal logics with the freeze operator [DL09, FS09]. Let LTL^{\alpha}(F,F^{-1}) be the set of formulae defined as follows:

\[
\varphi ::= a \mid \uparrow \mid \downarrow \varphi \mid \neg \varphi \mid \varphi \land \varphi \mid F\varphi \mid F^{-1}\varphi
\]

with \(a \in [1,\alpha]\). The operators \(F\) and \(F^{-1}\) are the standard (non-strict) temporal operators stating the existence of some future [resp. past] position satisfying a given property. The atomic formula \(\uparrow\) and the freeze operator \(\downarrow\) are interpreted as in hybrid logics [ABM01] except that instead of storing a node address, a data value is stored. Formulae in LTL^{\alpha}(F,F^{-1}) are interpreted over data words \(d\omega = (a^1, v^1) \cdots (a^L, v^L)\) in \(([1,\alpha]\times \mathbb{N})^+\) via the satisfaction relation \(\models_v\) (Boolean clauses are omitted and \(i \in [1, L]\)):

\[
\begin{align*}
d\omega, i \models_v a & \quad \text{def} \quad a^i = a \\
d\omega, i \models_v \uparrow & \quad \text{def} \quad v^i = v \\
d\omega, i \models_v \downarrow \varphi & \quad \text{def} \quad d\omega, i \models_v\varphi \\
d\omega, i \models_v F\varphi & \quad \text{def} \quad \text{there is } i' \in [i, L] \text{ such that } d\omega, i' \models_v\varphi \\
d\omega, i \models_v F^{-1}\varphi & \quad \text{def} \quad \text{there is } i' \in [1, i] \text{ such that } d\omega, i' \models_v\varphi.
\end{align*}
\]

A sentence is satisfiable \(\text{def} \quad \text{there is a data word } d\omega \text{ in } ([1,\alpha]\times \mathbb{N})^+ \text{ such that } d\omega, 1 \models \varphi\) (no need to specify a data value since \(\varphi\) is closed). The satisfiability problem for LTL^{\alpha}(F,F^{-1}) is known to be undecidable [FS09, Theorem 4].

Let us define \(T(\varphi)\) as follows:

\[
T(\varphi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} d\omega'(\alpha,0) \land tr(u_0, \varphi) \land mp(u_0) \land \neg \exists u_1 (u_1 \leftrightarrow u_0 \land mp(u_1))
\]

We aim at satisfying that \(\varphi\) is satisfiable iff \(T(\varphi)\) is satisfiable in 1SL3(\(\ast\))[\(\;\mathbb{Z},=\)]. The map \(tr\) takes two arguments: a quantified variable among \(\{u_0, u_1\}\) (variables are indeed recycled, see e.g. [Gab81]) and a formula. A third variable \(u_2\) is used but its purpose is to store a data value because of the presence of the freeze operator.

We define the logarithmic-space translation \(tr\) as follows (\(i \in \{0, 1\}\)) where \(tr\) is homomorphic for Boolean connectives:

115
4.1. DATA LOGICS

\[ tr(u_i, \uparrow) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (u_2 \sim u_i) \]
\[ tr(u_i, a) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\#u_i = a + 2) \]
\[ tr(u_i, \downarrow \psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_2 ((u_2 \sim u_i) \land tr(u_i, \psi)) \]
\[ tr(u_i, F\psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_{1-i} (tr(u_{1-i}, \psi) \land \text{mp}(u_{1-i}) \land \text{reach}(u_i, u_{1-i})) \]
\[ tr(u_i, F^{-1}\psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_{1-i} (tr(u_{1-i}, \psi) \land \text{mp}(u_{1-i}) \land \text{last}(u_{1-i}) \land \text{reach}(u_{1-i}, u_i)). \]

We recall that \( u_2 \sim u_i \) holds true when \( u_2 \) and \( u_i \) are allocated and have the same data value.

We have already seen how to define the formulae \( \#u_i = a + 2, \text{reach}(u_i, u_{1-i}), \text{mp}(u_{1-i}) \) and \( \text{dw}'(\alpha, 0) \). It is easy to check that \( \varphi \) is satisfiable iff \( T(\varphi) \) is satisfiable in \( 1\text{SL3}(\ast)[\mathbb{Z}, =] \) since the map \( tr \) only internalizes the semantics of \( \text{LTL}_1^a(F,F^{-1}) \) in \( 1\text{SL3}(\ast)[\mathbb{Z}, =] \).

**Theorem 4.1.1.** [BBL09, Theorem 3]

The satisfiability problem for \( 1\text{SL3}(\ast)[\mathbb{Z}, =] \) is undecidable.

Other undecidability results about separation logics with data values can be found in [BBL09].

### 4.1.3 A decidable fragment

In Section 4.1.1, we introduce an extension of \( 1\text{SL}(\ast) \) in which data interpreted in \( \mathbb{Z} \) are added and can be compared only locally. The translation from \( 1\text{SL}(\ast) \) to \( 1\text{MSOL} \) can be extended to \( 1\text{SL}_{\leq}^{\text{sdcl}} \), which provides a quite strong new decidability result.

**Proposition 4.1.2.** [BBL09, Corollary 1] The satisfiability problem for \( 1\text{SL}_{\leq}^{\text{sdcl}} \) is decidable.

It remains open to characterize a significant class of data domains for which the extension of \( 1\text{SL}(\ast) \) with data from those data domains would lead to decidability too. Other decidability results about \( 1\text{SL}(\ast) \) extended with data values can be found in [BBL09, Section 5.2].

### 4.1.4 First-order data logics

As mentioned earlier, there exist many formalisms to specify properties about data words; among them can be found first-order languages. Below, we recall a few
standard definitions. Finally, we sketch the proof of a reduction from an undecidable variant of first-order logic on data words into 1SL2. These results show interesting relationships between first-order logics on data words and separation logics.

Let us present the first-order language $\text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =, \sim, <)$ to interpret data words in $([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N})^+$ following developments from [BDM+11]. Most of the time, a fragment of the full language is needed, but it is helpful to provide the most general definition once and uniformly.

Let $\text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =, \sim, <)$ be the set of formulae defined below:

\[
\varphi ::= a(v) \mid v \sim_j v \mid v <_j v \mid v < v \mid v = 1 + (v) \mid v = v \mid \neg \varphi \mid \varphi \land \varphi \mid \exists v \varphi
\]

with $v ::= u_1 \mid u_2$, $j \in [1, \beta]$ and $a \in [1, \alpha]$. When $\beta = 0$, this implies that there is no atomic formula using $\sim_j$ or $<_j$. We write $\text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =, \sim, <)$ to denote the restriction of $\text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =, \sim, <)$ without $<$. Formulae in $\text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =, \sim, <)$ are interpreted over data words $d\omega = (a_1^1, v_1^1, \ldots, v_\beta^1) \cdots (a_i^L, v_i^L, \ldots, v_\beta^L)$ in $([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N})^+$ via the satisfaction relation $\models_\varphi$ parameterised by $\bar{f} : \{u_1, u_2\} \to [1, L]$ (Boolean clauses are omitted, and $i, i' \in \{1, 2\}$):

\[
\begin{align*}
\models_\varphi d\omega = a(u) & \quad \iff \quad a_{\bar{f}(u)} = a \\
\models_\varphi d\omega = u_i \sim_j u_{i'} & \quad \iff \quad v_{\bar{f}(u)} \mathrel{v_{\bar{f}(u)'}} = v_{\bar{f}(u')} \\
\models_\varphi d\omega = u_i <_j u_{i'} & \quad \iff \quad v_{\bar{f}(u)} < v_{\bar{f}(u')} \\
\models_\varphi d\omega = u_i = u_{i'} & \quad \iff \quad f(u_i) = f(u_{i'}) \\
\models_\varphi d\omega = 1 + (u) & \quad \iff \quad f(u_i) = f(u_{i'}) + 1 \\
\models_\varphi d\omega = u_i < u_{i'} & \quad \iff \quad f(u_i) < f(u_{i'}) \\
\models_\varphi d\omega = \exists u_i \varphi & \quad \iff \quad \text{there is } p \in [1, L] \text{ such that } d\omega \models_{[u_i \mapsto p]} \varphi.
\end{align*}
\]

A sentence $\varphi$ in $\text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =, \sim, <)$ is satisfiable $\iff$ there is a data word $d\omega$ in $([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N})^+$ such that $d\omega \models \varphi$ (no need to specify a variable assignment since $\varphi$ is closed).

Let us recall major results about $\text{FO2}$ on data words.

**Proposition 4.1.3.**

(1) The satisfiability problem for $\bigcup_{\alpha \geq 1} \text{FO2}_{\alpha,\beta}(<, +1, =)$ is NExpTime-complete [EVW97] (see also [Wei11, Corollary 2.2.4]).
4.1. DATA LOGICS

(II) The satisfiability problem for $\bigcup_{\alpha \geq 1} \text{FO}2_{\alpha,1}(\langle, +1, =, \sim \rangle)$ is decidable and closely related to the reachability problem for Petri nets [BDM+11, Dav09, Theorem 3].

(III) The satisfiability problem for $\bigcup_{\alpha \geq 1} \text{FO}2_{\alpha,2}(\langle, +1, =, \sim \rangle)$ is undecidable [BDM+11, Proposition 27][Dav09].

(IV) The satisfiability problem for $\bigcup_{\alpha \geq 1} \text{FO}2_{\alpha,1}(\langle, +1, =, \sim, \prec \rangle)$ is undecidable [BDM+11, Dav09].

Proposition 4.1.3(IV) shall be used in this section but decidability can be regained, as shown in [SZ12], where finite satisfiability of FO2 over data words with a linear order on the positions and a linear order and a corresponding successor relation on the data values shown in EXPSPACE [SZ12].

A slightly simpler undecidability proof for 1SL2 can be also obtained from the undecidability of the satisfiability problem for $\bigcup_{\alpha \geq 1} \text{FO}2_{\alpha,1}(\langle, +1, =, \sim, \prec \rangle)$ on data words [BDM+11] (see Theorem 4.1.3(IV)). Let us briefly provide the main ingredients for such a proof. We define a logarithmic-space translation $tr$ as follows. A position $u$ in the data word corresponds to a location on the main path of the fishbone encoding the same position but for the (unique) part related to the (unique) datum. In the translation process, we freely use macros defined earlier ($i, j \in \{1, 2\}$) and $tr$ is homomorphic for Boolean connectives:

\[
\begin{align*}
tr(u_i = u_j) & \quad \overset{df}{=} u_i = u_j \\
tr(u_i < u_j) & \quad \overset{df}{=} \text{reach}(u_i, u_j) \land u_i \neq u_j \\
tr(u_i = 1 + (u_i)) & \quad \overset{df}{=} \top \land \text{reach}'(u_i, u_j) \land (#u_i^2 = 1) \land \neg (#u_i^3 \geq 0)) \\
tr(\alpha(u_i)) & \quad \overset{df}{=} \exists u_{3-i} (u_{3-i} \leftarrow u_i) \land (#u_{3-i} = a + 2) \\
tr(u_i \sim_1 u_j) & \quad \overset{df}{=} #u_i = #u_j \\
tr(u_i \prec_1 u_j) & \quad \overset{df}{=} #u_i + 1 \leq #u_j \\
tr(\exists u_i \varphi) & \quad \overset{df}{=} \exists u_i (#u_i \geq \alpha + 3) \land tr(\varphi).
\end{align*}
\]

The arithmetical constraints of the form $#u_i = #u_j$ and $#u_i + 1 \leq #u_j$ are those defined in Section 3.2 when the quantified variables are interpreted by locations on the main path of some $(\alpha, 1)$-fishbone heap.

**Lemma 4.1.4.** Let $\varphi$ be a formula in FO2$_{\alpha,1}(\langle, +1, =, \sim, \prec \rangle)$.

(I) For every data word $dw$ in $([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N})^+$, $dw \models \varphi$ iff $b_{dw} \models dw(\alpha, 1) \land tr(\varphi)$.
(II) Let \( h \) be a heap such that \( h \models dw(\alpha, 1) \land tr(\varphi) \), then there is a data word \( dw \) in \( ([1, \alpha] \times \mathbb{N})^+ \) such that \( h \) and \( h_{dw} \) are isomorphic and \( dw \models \varphi \).

As a corollary, the satisfiability problem for 1SL\,2 is undecidable.

### 4.2 Interval Temporal Logics

Interval-based temporal logics admit time intervals as first-class objects (instead of time points), and an early and classical study for reasoning about intervals can be found in [All83]. One of the most prominent interval-based logics is Propositional Interval Temporal Logic (PI TL), introduced by Ben Moszkowski in [Mos83] for the verification of hardware components. It contains the so-called ‘chop’ operation that consists of chopping an interval into two subintervals. This is of course reminiscent of separating conjunction in separation logic, and in this section we make a formal statement about this correspondence. Before doing so, it is worth noting that even though most standard point-based temporal logics used in computer science are decidable (CTL, CTL\,*, ECTL\,*, etc.), undecidability is much more common in the realm of interval-based temporal logics (see e.g. [BMG+14]). Below, we consider PITL in which propositional variables are interpreted under the locality condition and for which decidability is guaranteed but computational complexity is very high. This will allow us to derive similar bounds for 1SL\,(\ast).

Below, we recall the main definitions about PITL under the locality condition and we explain why formulae from PITL can be faithfully translated into formulae in 1SL\,(\ast), leading to insights about both formalisms and new complexity results.

#### 4.2.1 The logic PITL

Given \( \alpha \geq 1 \), we consider the finite alphabet \( \Sigma = [1, \alpha] \) and we write \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) to denote propositional interval temporal logic in which the models are non-empty finite words in \( \Sigma^+ \). We write \( \text{PITL} \) instead of \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) when the finite alphabet \( \Sigma \) is clear from the context. Formulae for \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) are defined according to the following abstract grammar:

\[
\varphi :: \ a \mid \text{pt} \mid \neg \varphi \mid \varphi \land \varphi \mid \varphi \circ \varphi
\]

with \( a \in \Sigma \). Even though elements of \( \Sigma \) are natural numbers (for the sake of technical convenience), we write \( a \) to denote such an arbitrary element in order to
emphasise that $a$ is a letter from a finite alphabet. Roughly speaking, $a$ holds true at word $w$ when $a$ is the first letter of $w$. Similarly, the atomic formula $pt$ holds true at a word $w$ when the word $w$ is only a single letter. The connective $C$ is the chop operator, which chops a word.

Formally, we have a nonempty word $w \in \Sigma^+$, its length $|w|$, extractions of the $i$th letter $w_i$ where $1 \leq i \leq |w|$, and extractions of nonempty subwords $w_{i..j} = w_iw_{i+1}..w_j$, where $1 \leq i \leq j \leq |w|$. We define a ternary relation $\text{chops}$ on words:

$$\text{chops} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{ (w_1, w_2, w_3) \mid \exists a, w', w'' \text{ s.t. } w_1 = w'aw'', w_2 = w'a, w_3 = aw'' \}.$$

Observe that when a word $w_1$ is chopped into two subwords $w_2$ and $w_3$, there is an overlap between the last letter of $w_2$ and the first letter of $w_3$. For instance, $(abb, ab, bb) \in \text{chops}$ but $(ab, a, b) \notin \text{chops}$.

Let us define the satisfaction relation $\models$ for PITL$_\Sigma$ between a word $w \in \Sigma^+$ and a formula $\phi$:

- $w \models a \overset{\text{def}}{\iff}$ the first letter of $w$ is $a$
- $w \models pt \overset{\text{def}}{\iff}$ the length of $w$ is equal to one
- $w \models \neg \phi \overset{\text{def}}{\iff} w \not\models \phi$
- $w \models \phi \land \psi \overset{\text{def}}{\iff} w \models \phi$ and $w \models \psi$
- $w \models \phi \ C \psi \overset{\text{def}}{\iff}$ there exist words $w_1, w_2$ such that $\text{chops} (w, w_1, w_2)$, $w_1 \models \phi$ and $w_2 \models \psi$.

The satisfiability problem for PITL$_\Sigma$ consists in checking whether a PITL$_\Sigma$ formula admits a model satisfying it. Note that the models are nonempty, finite words and the satisfaction of a letter on a word depends only on its first letter (the locality condition).

**Two examples** Consider the alphabet $\Sigma$ with two distinct letters $a$ and $b$ and the PITL$_\Sigma$ formula below:

$$(b \ C a) \ C \neg pt$$

This formula is satisfiable; many words satisfy this formula, for example the word “bab”—the top-level chop is satisfied since $ba \models b \ C a$ and $ab \models \neg pt$. This gives insight on how to specify a lower bound on word length, by applying sufficiently many chops and $\neg pt$ to force a particular (minimum) length. Of course, $b \ C a$ also enforces a minimum word length (of 2), but constrains also the word content.

Consider another example:

$$pt \land (a \ C b).$$
CHAPTER 4. RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS

For this formula to be satisfiable, there must exist a word $w$ for which both $w \models pt$ and $w \models a \land b$. This is impossible, as the first implies $|w| = 1$, and there is no way to chop a single-letter word into subwords that satisfy both $a$ and $b$; the formula is unsatisfiable.

**Proposition 4.2.1.** (see e.g. [Mos83, Mos04]) Given $\alpha \geq 1$ and $\Sigma = [1, \alpha]$, the satisfiability problem for PITL$_\Sigma$ is decidable, but with $\alpha \geq 2$ is not elementary recursive.

### 4.2.2 A correspondence between words and heaps

From now on, we use the data word representation from Section 3.1. Thanks to Lemma 3.1.3, we know there is a fishbone heap $h_w$ corresponding to each nonempty word $w \in \Sigma^+$. Let us define a relation $\sim$ that establishes this correspondence between words and their fishbone representations, adding also a correspondence between the empty word and the empty heap:

$$\sim \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{(w, h_w) \mid w \in \Sigma^+\} \cup \{(\varepsilon, \emptyset)\}.$$ 

Here, observe that:

1. $\sim$ is a bijection between the set of finite words in $\Sigma^*$ and the set of (equivalence classes of isomorphic) $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heaps augmented with the empty heap;
2. so, every word $w$ is in $\text{dom}(\sim)$;
3. so, every $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heap is in $\text{ran}(\sim)$;
4. so, if $w \sim h$, $h$ is either empty or an $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heap; and
5. if $w \sim h$, then $w$ is empty iff $\text{dom}(h)$ is empty.

In this section, we will only employ $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heaps, with $\alpha = \text{card}(\Sigma)$.

The correspondence between finite words in $\Sigma^+$ and $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heaps satisfies a nice property as far as splitting a word into two disjoint subwords is concerned (which is a slight variant of chopping). Before making a formal statement, let us introduce the following notion.

A **clean cut** of a $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heap $h$ is a pair of $(\alpha, 0)$-fishbone heaps $(h_1, h_2)$ such that $h = h_1 \cup h_2$, and for some words $w_1 \sim h_1$ and $w_2 \sim h_2$, we have $w_1 w_2 \sim h$. That is, a clean cut is one that neatly cleaves a heap representation of a word...
4.2. INTERVAL TEMPORAL LOGICS

into two subheaps in correspondence with two subwords. Figure 4.1 illustrates examples of a clean cut and a non-clean cut on a fishbone heap. Clockwise from left: the original \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heap; a clean cut of the original heap; a non-clean cut of the original heap. Note that clean cuts must result in two \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heaps. A non-clean cut may or may not do so; the figure depicts a non-clean cut that does result in two \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heaps. Informally, a non-clean cut is one that either results in one subheap (or both) no longer satisfying the \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone conditions, or that results in subheaps that don’t preserve predecessor counts and thus don’t represent subwords of the original.

![Figure 4.1: A visual depiction of clean and non-clean cuts.](image)

**Lemma 4.2.2.** Let \(w \sim h\) with \(w = w_1w_2 \in \Sigma^*\). There exist heaps \(h_1\) and \(h_2\) such that \(h = h_1 \uplus h_2\), \(w_1 \sim h_1\), and \(w_2 \sim h_2\).

**Proof.** Suppose that \(w \sim h\) and \(w = w_1w_2 \in \Sigma^*\). If \(w_1 = \varepsilon\) or \(w_2 = \varepsilon\), then the proof is by an easy verification with \(h\) equal to \(h_1\) or \(h_2\) respectively. In particular, if \(w = \varepsilon\), then \(h\) is the empty heap and therefore \(w_1 = w_2 = \varepsilon\) and \(h_1 = h_2 = \emptyset\), which satisfies the statement.
Otherwise suppose that \( w = a_1 \cdots a_K \in \Sigma^+, \ w_1 = a_1 \cdots a_{K'} \in \Sigma^+ \), \( w_2 = a_{K'+1} \cdots a_K \in \Sigma^+ \) (\( K > K' \)). Since \( w \) is nonempty and \( w \sim h \), \( h \) is a fishbone heap and the main path of \( h \) is of the form \( l_1 \to l_2 \to \cdots \to l_K \) and for every \( i \in [1, K] \), \( \#l_i = a_i + 2 \). Let \( h_1 \) be the subheap of \( h \) whose domain is \( \{ l' \in \mathbb{N} : l' \) is an ancestor of \( l_K \) in \( h \} \), and let \( h_2 \) be the unique heap such that \( h = h_1 \sqcup h_2 \). It is easy to show that \( w_1 \sim h_1 \) and \( w_2 \sim h_2 \). Moreover, it is not difficult to see that \((h_1, h_2)\) is a clean cut of \( h \) \( \text{QED} \).

Lemma 4.2.2 entails the following lemma, that will be useful to show the correctness of our reduction from \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) into \( 1\text{SL}_2(\ast) \). It is tailored to the semantics of the chop operator in \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \).

**Lemma 4.2.3.** For all letters \( a, b \in \Sigma \), words \( w \in \Sigma^+ \) and \( w', w'' \in \Sigma^* \), and heaps \( h \) such that \( w \sim h \) and \( \text{chops}(aw, aw'b, bw'') \), there exist heaps \( h_1, h_2 \) such that \( w'b \sim h_1 \), \( w'' \sim h_2 \), and \( h = h_1 \sqcup h_2 \).

### 4.2.3 A reduction and its three ways to chop

In this section, we present a satisfiability-preserving translation of \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) into \( 1\text{SL}_2(\ast) \). This translation hinges on the insight that the chop operation is very similar to the separating conjunction in separation logic. However, the correspondence is not an exact one: the connective \( C \) of \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) does not cut into disjoint pieces, but rather preserves one letter on both sides, in a sense “duplicating” the letter upon which the chop operates.

To handle this discrepancy, our translation uses the standard separating conjunction on heaps, but internally carries a “ghost letter” (a parameter to the translation) on one side to represent this “lost” letter. In the translation, we denote this ghost letter parameter \( a \in \Sigma \). Figure 4.2 illustrates how a chop operation on words is translated into a separation on heaps. It is worth noting that we must always obtain a clean cut from the original heap.

Before presenting the formal definition of the translation, let us present a formula that allows us to perform a clean cut for which one of the subheaps contains all the ancestors of \( f(u) \). Such a formula will be used in the translation and this is the purpose of Lemma 4.2.4 below.

**Lemma 4.2.4.** Given a fishbone heap \( h \) and a word \( w \) such that \( w \sim h \), and an assignment \( \bar{\bar{f}} \) such that \( f(u) \) is a location on the main path of \( h \) with \( h \models \bar{\bar{f}} \text{alloc}(u) \), any pair of heaps \((h_1, h_2)\) such that \( h = h_1 \sqcup h_2 \), \( h_1 \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land \neg \text{alloc}(u) \), and \( h_2 \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land \bar{\bar{f}}u = 0 \), is a clean cut of \( h \).
4.2. INTERVAL TEMPORAL LOGICS

Figure 4.2: The correspondence between PITL’s chop ‘C’ and separation logic’s separating conjunction ‘∗’ (before and after).

**Proof.** Since \( h_1 \models_f \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \) and \( h_2 \models_f \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \), we know the heaps \( h_1 \) and \( h_2 \) are (\( \alpha, 0 \))-fishbones. Fishbones are single components, so we know that \( h \) must be separated into exactly two connected components. It remains to analyse precisely how \( h \) can be separated into two fishbones, and to show that it must be a clean cut.

We know \( l = f(u) \) is on the main path of \( h \), so that means \( h \models_f \#u > 0 \). Since \( h_2 \models_f \#u = 0 \), that means \( l \) must have the same number of predecessors in \( h \) as it does in \( h_1 \). We know \( h_1 \models_f \neg \text{alloc}(u) \), and we know \( l \) has at least one predecessor in \( h_1 \). Therefore, \( l \) is on the main path of \( h_1 \). We know \( h_2 \models_f \#u = 0 \), so \( l \) is not on the main path of \( h_2 \). However, it is allocated (since \( h \models_f \text{alloc}(u) \) and \( h_1 \models_f \neg \text{alloc}(u) \)), so its successor (call the location \( l' \)) is on the main path of \( h_2 \). Let \( f' = f[\bar{u} \mapsto l'] \). Now, note that \( h \models_f u \leftrightarrow \bar{u} \) and \( h_1 \not\models_f u \leftrightarrow \bar{u} \), and recall that that on a fishbone, no two predecessors of an element can both have predecessors (fb3). Therefore, \( l' \) must have the same number of predecessors in \( h_2 \) as it did in \( h \), and none of these predecessors can be on the main path.

Thus \( l \) is the final location on the main path of \( h_1 \), and \( l' \) is the first location on the main path of \( h_2 \). Further, \( l \) has 0 predecessors in \( h_2 \) and the same number of predecessors in \( h \) and \( h_1 \). \( l' \) has 0 predecessors in \( h_1 \) and the same number of predecessors in \( h \) and \( h_2 \).
Putting the above together, since \( l \) and \( l' \) are positions on the main path of \( h \) such that \( h(l) = l' \), and since \( l \notin \text{dom}(h_1), l \in \text{dom}(h_2), l \in \text{ran}(h_1), l \notin \text{ran}(h_2) \), we must have a clean cut.

\[
\text{QED}
\]

We reduce a PITL\(_\Sigma\) formula \( \varphi \) to a 1SL2(\( \ast \)) formula \( t(\varphi) \) with the help of the main translation \( t(\cdot) \). We use the auxiliary translation map \( t_a(\cdot) \) parameterised by a ghost letter \( a \). The three disjuncts in the translation of \( \varphi \mathcal{C} \psi \) correspond to three types of chopping of \( w \) that leads to three ways of separating the heap \( h \) (assuming that \( w \sim h \)):

1. When \((w, aw_1 b, bw_2) \in \text{chops} \) and the ghost letter is \( a \), the heap \( h \) is separated into the heap \( h_1 \) with \( w_1 b \sim h_1 \) (with ghost letter \( a \)) and into the heap \( h_2 \) with \( w_2 \sim h_2 \) (with ghost letter \( b \)).

2. When \((w, w, b) \in \text{chops} \) and the ghost letter is \( a \), the heap \( h \) is separated into itself (again with ghost letter \( a \)) and into the empty heap (with ghost letter \( b \)).

3. When \((w, a, w) \in \text{chops} \) and the ghost letter is \( a \), the heap \( h \) is separated into the empty heap (with ghost letter \( a \)) and into itself (again with ghost letter \( a \)).

These are the three possible cases and the rest of the translation is quite straightforward.

\[
t(\varphi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\mathsf{dw}(\alpha, 0) \lor \mathsf{emp}) \land \bigvee_{a \in \Sigma} t_a(\varphi)
\]

The map \( t_a(\cdot) \) is homomorphic for Boolean connectives and it is defined as follows for the remaining cases:

\[
\begin{align*}
t_a(b) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \top \text{ if } b = a \\
t_a(b) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bot \text{ if } b \neq a \\
t_a(\mathsf{pt}) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \mathsf{emp} \\
t_a(\varphi \mathcal{C} \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{chop}_1 \lor \text{chop}_2 \lor \text{chop}_3 \text{ (see below)} \\
\text{chop}_1 & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{b \in \Sigma} \exists u (\#u = b + 2 \land [\mathsf{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land \neg \mathsf{alloc}(u) \land t_a(\varphi) \ast \mathsf{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land \#u = 0 \land t_b(\psi)]) \\
\text{chop}_2 & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{b \in \Sigma} (\exists u \text{ last}(u) \land \#u = b + 2) \land [t_a(\varphi) \ast (\mathsf{emp} \land t_b(\psi))] \\
\text{chop}_3 & \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\mathsf{emp} \land t_a(\varphi)) \ast t_a(\psi)
\end{align*}
\]
4.2. INTERVAL TEMPORAL LOGICS

In full generality, \( t_a() \) is also parameterised by the alphabet \( \Sigma \) (see the clause for formulae with outermost chop operator \( C \)) and the formulae \( \text{chop1}_a \), \( \text{chop2}_a \), and \( \text{chop3}_a \) are parameterised by \( \phi \ C \psi \). Clearly the translation \( t() \) can only produce 1SL2(*) formulae, as the right-hand side of each translation step above is in 1SL2(*). Note also that \( t_a(\phi) \) always produces a closed formula (i.e., without free occurrences of individual variables).

The correctness of the translation is stated below, making completely explicit the role of the ghost letter in the translation process.

**Lemma 4.2.5.** Let \( a \in \Sigma \), \( w \in \Sigma^* \), and \( h \) be a heap such that \( w \sim h \). For every \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) formula \( \phi \), we have \( aw \models \phi \) iff \( h \models t_a(\phi) \).

Since \( t_a(\phi) \) has no free occurrences of individual variables, in Lemma 4.2.5, there is no need to specify what the assignments are. The proof is by structural induction and it is left as Exercise 4.3.

As a result, we obtain a reduction between the satisfiability problems, as stated below.

**Lemma 4.2.6.** Given \( \alpha \geq 1 \) and \( \Sigma = [1, \alpha] \), a \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \) formula \( \phi \) is satisfiable if and only if the 1SL2(*) formula \( t(\phi) \) is satisfiable.

**Proof.** (\( \Rightarrow \)) Suppose that \( \phi \) is satisfiable. This means that there exists a nonempty word \( w \) such that \( w \models \phi \). The word \( w \) can be written in the form \( w = aw' \) for some letter \( a \). If \( w' = \varepsilon \), we have \( w' \sim \emptyset \) and by Lemma 4.2.5, we have \( \emptyset \models \text{emp} \land t_a(\phi) \). So \( \emptyset \models t(\phi) \) and therefore \( t(\phi) \) is satisfiable. If \( w' \neq \varepsilon \), then there is a \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heap \( b' \) such that \( w' \sim b' \). By Lemma 4.2.5, we have \( b' \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land t_a(\phi) \). So \( b' \models t(\phi) \) and therefore \( t(\phi) \) is satisfiable.

(\( \Leftarrow \)) If \( t(\phi) \) is satisfiable, then there exists a heap \( h \) such that

\[
h \models (\text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \lor \text{emp}) \land \bigvee_{a \in \Sigma} t_a(\phi).
\]

If \( h \models \text{emp} \land t_a(\phi) \) for some letter \( a \), then by Lemma 4.2.5, we have \( a \models \phi \). Otherwise, if \( h \models \text{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land t_a(\phi) \), then \( h \) is an \((\alpha, 0)\)-fishbone heap by Lemma 3.1.2 and then there is a word \( w \) such that \( w \sim h \) such that by Lemma 4.2.5, we have \( aw \models \phi \). In both cases, \( \phi \) is a satisfiable formula in \( \text{PITL}_\Sigma \).

**Theorem 4.2.7.** The satisfiability problem for 1SL2(*) is decidable but not elementary recursive.
Proof. Satisfiability for PITL$_\Sigma$ is known to be decidable with non-elementary complexity when $\Sigma$ has at least two elements, see e.g. [Mos83, Mos04], and 1SL(*) is decidable [BDL12] (see also Section 4.4). From the correctness of our translation $t(\cdot)$ of PITL$_\Sigma$ to $1SL2(*)$ (Lemma 4.2.6), we then conclude that $1SL2(*)$ is decidable but not elementary recursive. Note that the map $t(\cdot)$ may require exponential time and space in the size of the input formula in the worst-case but this is still fine to establish that $1SL2(*)$ is not elementary recursive, since this adds only a single exponential.

As mentioned earlier, Theorem 4.2.7 refines the non-elementarity result for 1SL(*) established in [BDL12]. So, solving the satisfiability problem for $1SL2(*)$ requires time bounded below by towers of exponentials of height that depend on the formula size, see e.g. [Sch15].

Remark. The reduction from PITL to $1SL2(*)$ [DD15b] allows us to underline the common features of both formalisms. To our knowledge, this is the first time that the similarity has been turned into a concrete, interesting result. The possibility to relate separation logic and interval temporal logic has been already envisaged by Tony Hoare, see e.g. [Zho08] (We thank Ben Moszkowski for pointing us to this work.)

However, non-elementarity of $1SL2(*)$ can be established in a slightly different way as explained below. First, non-elementarity of PITL is due to Dexter Kozen (see e.g. [Mos04, Appendix A.3]) (We thank Ben Moszkowski for pointing us to this fact.), and the proof is by reduction from the nonemptiness problem of regular expressions built over a binary alphabet with union, concatenation and complement [Sto74]. Nonelementarity of $1SL2(*)$ can be obtained by defining a similar reduction, but this is of course less insightful to understand the relationships between interval temporal logic and separation logic. Alternatively, it is also possible to consider the variant of PITL in which the chop operator does not share a letter, since this variant is of identical expressive power and complexity. In that way, we may avoid the introduction of the ghost letter but at the cost of introducing empty models (which may occur when chopping has no sharing) and of using a less standard interval temporal logic. So, the current reduction from PITL is quite an attractive option to relate the logics. Finally, as noted in [Mos04, Appendix A], complexity results about PITL presented in [Mos83] were obtained in collaboration with Joseph Halpern.

In Section 4.3.2 below, we establish an even stronger result about $1SL2(*)$ (see Theorem 4.3.5). The proof uses the same principles as for the proof of Theorem 4.2.7 and we only need to express the properties in modal lingua.
4.3 Modal Logics

4.3.1 A modal logic for heaps

Let us introduce a new modal logic that is closely related to 1SL2. Modal Logic for Heaps (MLH) is a multimodal logic in which models are exactly heap graphs and it does not contain propositional variables (as 1SL does not contain unary predicate symbols). In a sense, it is similar to Hennessy-Milner logic HML [HM80] in which the only atomic formulae are truth constants. However, the language contains modal operators and separating connectives, which is a feature shared with the logics defined in [CG13]. We define below the formulae of the modal logic MLH.

\[ \varphi ::= \bot | \neg \varphi | \varphi \land \varphi | \Diamond \varphi | \Diamond^1 \varphi | \langle \# \rangle \varphi | \langle \star \rangle \varphi | \varphi \ast \varphi | \varphi \rightarrow \varphi . \]

There are no quantified variables involved in formulae, which is a feature shared with most known propositional modal logics, see e.g. [BdRV01]. We write MLH(\ast) to denote the fragment of MLH without the magic wand operator \( \ast \).

A model for MLH is a pair \((N, R)\) such that \(R\) is a binary relation on \(N\) that is finite and functional. Otherwise said, the models for MLH are heap graphs (when the heaps encode a unique record field, i.e. \(k = 1\)). Models for MLH could be alternatively defined as heaps but we prefer to stick to the most usual presentation for modal logics with frames. The satisfaction relation \(\models\) is defined below and it provides a standard semantics for the modal operators and separating connectives (we omit the clauses for Boolean connectives):

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{never } M, l &|\models \bot \\
M, l &|\models \Diamond \varphi & \iff \text{there is } l' \text{ such that } (l, l') \in R \text{ and } M, l' \models \varphi \\
M, l &|\models \Diamond^1 \varphi & \iff \text{there is } l' \text{ such that } (l', l) \in R \text{ and } M, l' \models \varphi \\
M, l &|\models \langle \star \rangle \varphi & \iff \text{there is } l' \text{ such that } (l, l') \in R' \text{ and } M, l' \models \varphi \\
M, l &|\models \langle \# \rangle \varphi & \iff \text{there is } l' \neq l \text{ such that } M, l' \models \varphi \\
M, l &|\models \varphi_1 \ast \varphi_2 & \iff (N, R_1), l |\models \varphi_1 \text{ and } (N, R_2), l |\models \varphi_2 \\
& \text{for some partition } \{R_1, R_2\} \text{ of } R \\
M, l &|\models \varphi_1 \rightarrow \varphi_2 & \iff \text{for all models } M' = (N, R') \text{ such that } R \cap R' = \emptyset \\
& \text{and } R \cup R' \text{ is functional, } M', l |\models \varphi_1 \text{ implies } (N, R \cup R'), l |\models \varphi_2 \\
\end{align*} \]

We use the following standard abbreviations:
CHAPTER 4. RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS

\[ (U)\varphi \overset{\text{def}}{=} \varphi \lor (\#) \varphi \]
\[ [U]\varphi \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg(U)\neg\varphi \]
\[ ]\varphi \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg(\#)\neg\varphi \]
\[ \diamond^{\geq k} T \overset{\text{def}}{=} \diamond^{\geq k} T \cdots \diamond^{\leq k} T \]
\[ \diamond^{< k} T \overset{\text{def}}{=} \neg\diamond^{\leq k} T \]
\[ \diamond^1 T \overset{\text{def}}{=} \diamond^1 T \land \diamond^1 T \]
\[ \diamond^1 T \overset{\text{def}}{=} \diamond^1 T \land \diamond^1 T \]

Whenever \( \varphi \) is already in MLH(*), these abbreviations allow to remain in MLH(*).

A formula \( \varphi \) is satisfiable whenever there is a model \( M \) and a location \( I \) such that \( M, I \models \varphi \). The satisfiability problem for MLH is therefore defined as any such problem for modal logics.

Note that MLH has forward and backward modalities as in Prior’s tense logic (see e.g. [Pri67]), the inequality modal operator (see e.g. [dR92]) and the transitive closure operator as in PDL (see e.g. [HKT00]). The most non-standard feature of MLH is certainly the presence of the separating connectives.

It is possible to design a relational translation from MLH formulae into 1SL2 formulae by recycling variables (only \( u_1 \) and \( u_2 \) are used, so \( i \in \{ 1, 2 \} \)) and \( tr \) is homomorphic for the connectives \( \neg, \land, * \) and \( \rightarrow \):

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{tr}(\perp, u_i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \perp \\
\text{tr}(\diamond \varphi, u_i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_{3-i} (u_i \leftrightarrow u_{3-i} \land tr(\varphi, u_{3-i})) \\
\text{tr}(\neg \varphi, u_i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_{3-i} (u_{3-i} \leftrightarrow u_i) \land tr(\varphi, u_{3-i}) \\
\text{tr}(\# \varphi, u_i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_{3-i} (u_{3-i} \land \neg u_{3-i}) \land tr(\varphi, u_{3-i}) \\
\text{tr}(\ast \varphi, u_i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists u_{3-i} \text{reach}(u_i, u_{3-i}) \land tr(\varphi, u_{3-i}).
\end{align*} \]

The formulae of the form \( \text{reach}(u_i, u_j) \) have been introduced in Section 1.2.2 and states the reachability of \( u_j \) from \( u_i \).

**Lemma 4.3.1.** A formula \( \varphi \) in MLH is satisfiable iff \( \exists u_1 \text{ tr}(\varphi, u_1) \) is satisfiable in 1SL2. Moreover, if \( \varphi \) is in MLH(*), then \( \exists u_1 \text{ tr}(\varphi, u_1) \) is in 1SL2(*).

**Proof.** (sketch) The proof is obtained as an obvious adaptation of the proof for the relational translation from modal logic K into FO2, see e.g. [Mor76, vB76, BdRV01]. Indeed, the models \( (\mathbb{N}, R) \) for MLH are heap graphs and therefore formulae in 1SL2 can be equivalently interpreted on MLH models; for instance, we get \( (\mathbb{N}, \mathcal{R}) \models u_1 \leftrightarrow u_2 \text{ iff } (\bar{t}(u_1), \bar{t}(u_2)) \in \mathcal{R} \). Similarly, \( (\mathbb{N}, \mathcal{R}) \models \varphi_1 \rightarrow \varphi_2 \)
iff for all MLH models $\langle N, R' \rangle$ such that $\langle N, R \cup R' \rangle$ is an MLH model too and $\langle N, R' \rangle \models \varphi_1$, we have $\langle N, R \cup R' \rangle \models \varphi_2$.

Note that $u_j$ is the only free variable in $tr(\varphi, u_j)$. The standard translation $tr$ is semantically faithful in the following sense: for all MLH models $\langle N, R \rangle$, $l \in \mathbb{N}$ and formulae $\varphi$ in MLH, we have $\langle N, R \rangle, l \models \varphi$ iff $\langle N, R \rangle \models_{[u_l \mapsto l]} tr(\varphi, u_l)$. This is sufficient to establish Lemma 4.3.1.

We show that for all $i \in \{1, 2\}$, for all formulae $\psi$ in MLH, for all MLH models $\mathcal{M} = \langle N, R \rangle$ and for $l \in \mathbb{N}$, we have $\mathcal{M}, l \models \psi$ iff $\mathcal{M} \models_{[u_l \mapsto l]} tr(\psi, u_l)$. The proof is by structural induction. The base case for $\bot$ and the cases in the induction step for the Boolean connectives are straightforward. By way of example, let us provide the cases in the induction step for $\psi = (\star)\psi'$ and for $\psi = \psi_1 \ast \psi_2$. The proof for the other cases is similar and quite standard.

Case $\psi = (\star)\psi'$. The following are equivalent:

- $\mathcal{M}, l \models \psi$,
- $\mathcal{M}, l' \models \psi'$ for some $l' \in R^\prime(l)$ (by definition of $\models$),
- $\mathcal{M} \models_{[u_{l', \mapsto l' \mapsto l'}]} tr(\psi', x_{3-l})$ for some $l' \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $l' \in R^\prime(l)$ (by the induction hypothesis),
- $\mathcal{M} \models_{[u_{l \mapsto l}]} \exists u_{3-l} \text{reach}(u_{i_l}, u_{3-l}) \land tr(\psi', x_{3-l})$ (by definition of $\models$ in $1SL2$ and by the fact that $\text{reach}$ is the reachability predicate),
- $\mathcal{M} \models_{[u_{l \mapsto l}]} tr(\psi, u_l)$ (by definition of $tr$).

Case $\psi = \psi_1 \ast \psi_2$. The following are equivalent:

- $\mathcal{M}, l \models \psi$,
- $\langle N, R_1 \rangle, l \models \psi_1$ and $\langle N, R_2 \rangle, l \models \psi_2$ for some partition $\{R_1, R_2\}$ of $R$, (by definition of $\models$ in MLH),
- $\langle N, R_1 \rangle \models_{[u_{l \mapsto l}]} tr(\psi_1, u_l)$ and $\langle N, R_2 \rangle \models_{[u_{l \mapsto l}]} tr(\psi_2, u_l)$ for some partition $\{R_1, R_2\}$ of $R$, (by the induction hypothesis),
- $\mathcal{M} \models_{[u_{l \mapsto l}]} tr(\psi_1, u_l) \ast tr(\psi_2, u_l)$ (by definition of the satisfaction relation in $1SL2$)
- $\mathcal{M} \models_{[u_{l \mapsto l}]} tr(\psi, u_l)$ (by definition of $tr$).
Modal logic MLH can be viewed as a fragment of 1SL2. Any formula $\psi_1 \ast \psi_2$ [resp. $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$] in $tr(\varphi, u_1)$ has at most one free variable. A similar restriction can be found in monodic fragments for first-order temporal logics, see e.g. [DFL02].

Since MLH(*) can be translated into 1SL2(*) and 1SL(*) is decidable [BDL12, Corollary 3.3] (see also Section 4.4), we get decidability of MLH(*) as a corollary.

**Corollary 4.3.2.** The satisfiability problem for MLH(*) is decidable.

Note that to be more uniform, we could have added to the modal language the converse operators $\langle \not= \rangle^{-1}$ and $\langle \star \rangle^{-1}$. However, since the inequality relation is symmetric, $\langle \not= \rangle^{-1} \varphi$ is logically equivalent to $\langle \not= \rangle \varphi$. The above translation can be obviously extended with the modal operator $\langle \star \rangle^{-1}$ and therefore decidability holds also for this extension. However, we have introduced MLH mainly to establish non-elementarity of MLH(*) (shown below), refining the result for 1SL2(*). We did not include $\langle \star \rangle^{-1}$ because the proof of non-elementarity result does not require it. By contrast, we do not know whether the satisfiability problem for MLH is decidable. As far as we know, the characterisation of the computational complexity of MLH without separating connectives is open too. This corresponds to a fragment of deterministic PDL with (restricted) graded modalities and inequality modality.

**4.3.2 A refinement with the modal fragment of 1SL2(*)**

In this section, we show that the satisfiability problem for MLH(*) is decidable but it is not elementary recursive. Decidability is due to the fact that the standard translation leads to formulae in 1SL2(*), see Section 4.3.1. In order to establish the lower bound, we express in MLH(*) all the properties that were useful to translate PITL$_\Sigma$ formulae into 1SL2(*). For instance, note that the empty heap is the only heap validating the formula $[\{U\} \neg \Diamond T]$. Similarly, a location with at least one predecessor and with no successor (for instance, last location on the main path in a fishbone heap) satisfies the formula $(\Diamond^{-1} T \land \neg \Diamond T)$.

More interestingly, the formula in 1SL2(*) characterising the $(\alpha, \beta)$-fishbone heaps has a modal counterpart. Let us consider the following formulae.

- The formula $\varphi_{fb}^\Box$ defined below is designed exactly as the formula $\varphi_{fb}$ (see Section 3.1).

\[
\langle \Diamond \rangle (\Diamond^{-1} T \land \neg \Diamond T) \land \\
\langle U \rangle ((\Diamond^{-1} T \land \neg \Diamond T) \land [\not=] \neg (\Diamond^{-1} T \land \neg \Diamond T)) \land [U] (\Diamond T \Rightarrow \langle \star \rangle (\Diamond^{-1} T \land \neg \Diamond T)) \land
\]

131
4.3. MODAL LOGICS

\((\neg\langle U \rangle (\Diamond^{-1}\Diamond^{-1}\top \ast \Diamond^{-1}\Diamond^{-1}\top))).\)

This is a faithful translation except that we use the specification language MLH(*)).

- The formula \(\varphi_{(C1)}^\Box\) defined below is also designed exactly as the formula \(\varphi_{(C1)}\) (see Section 3.1).

\[\langle U \rangle ((\Diamond^{-1}\top) \land (\neg\Diamond^{-1}\Diamond^{-1}\top) \land \Diamond^{-1}_{[3,\alpha+3]}\top).\]

- The formula \(\varphi_{(C2)}^\Box\) is equal to \([U](\Diamond^{-1}_{[3,\alpha+3]}\top \Rightarrow \bigwedge_{i \in [1,\beta]} \Diamond \cdot \Diamond \geq \alpha+3\top).\)

- The formula \(\varphi_{(C3)}^\Box\) is defined below:

\[\varphi_{(C3)}^\Box = \Diamond^{-1}_{[3,\alpha+3]}\top \Rightarrow (\neg \Diamond \cdot \Diamond \top) \lor \Diamond \cdot \Diamond (\Diamond^{-1}_{[3,\alpha+3]}\top)).\]

We write \(dw^\Box(\alpha,\beta)\) to denote the formula \(\varphi_{fb}^\Box \land \varphi_{(C1)}^\Box \land \varphi_{(C2)}^\Box \land \varphi_{(C3)}^\Box\). It specifies the shape of the encoding of data words in \(\langle 1,\alpha \rangle \times \mathbb{N}^\beta\) as stated below. Note that since \(dw^\Box(\alpha,\beta)\) is a Boolean combination of formulae whose outermost connectives are \([U]\) or \(\langle U \rangle\), then \(dw^\Box(\alpha,\beta)\) holds true at some location iff \(dw^\Box(\alpha,\beta)\) holds true at any location.

**Lemma 4.3.3.** Let \(\mathcal{M} = (\mathbb{N},\mathcal{R})\) be a model for MLH. \(\mathcal{M}, I \models dw^\Box(\alpha,\beta)\) for some location \(I\) iff \(\mathcal{M}\) is the graph of an \((\alpha,\beta)\)-fishbone heap.

Again, the proof is by an easy verification by using Lemma 3.1.1 and the correspondence between condition \((Ci)\) and the formula \(\varphi_{(Ci)}^\Box\). In the rest of this section we are back to the case \(\beta = 0\).

Given a formula \(\varphi\) in PITL(\(\Sigma\)) with \(\Sigma = [1,\alpha]\), we define a modal formula \(t(\varphi)^\Box\) such that \(\varphi\) is satisfiable iff \(t(\varphi)^\Box\) is satisfiable. Actually, the modal formula \(t(\varphi)^\Box\) will express exactly the same properties as in the translation into 1SL2(*). For instance, \(t(\varphi)^\Box\) is precisely the formula below:

\[(dw^\Box(\alpha,0) \lor ([U] \neg \Diamond \top)) \land (\bigvee_{a \in \Sigma} t(\varphi)^\Box_\alpha)\]

The formula \(t(\varphi)^\Box_\alpha\) is defined inductively as follows.


CHAPTER 4. RELATIONSHIPS TO OTHER LOGICS

• $t(a)^\Box_a \overset{\text{def}}{=} \top$ and $t(b)^\Box_a \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bot$ for every letter $b \in \Sigma \setminus \{a\}$.

• $t(\cdot)^\Box_a$ is homomorphic for Boolean connectives.

• $t(pt)^\Box_a \overset{\text{def}}{=} ([U] \not\Box T)$.

• The formula $t(\varphi C \psi)^\Box_a$ is defined as $\text{chop}1^\Box_a \lor \text{chop}2^\Box_a \lor \text{chop}3^\Box_a$ where:

  - $\text{chop}1^\Box_a \overset{\text{def}}{=} \lor_{b \in \Sigma} \langle U \rangle((\not\Box_b \top \land \mathsf{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land \not\Box T \land t(\varphi)^\Box_a) \ast (\mathsf{dw}(\alpha, 0) \land \not\Box b \top \land t(\psi)^\Box_b)))$,

  - $\text{chop}2^\Box_a \overset{\text{def}}{=} (\lor_{b \in \Sigma} \langle U \rangle ((\not\Box_b \top \land \not\Box T) \land \not\Box b \top \land (t(\varphi)^\Box_a \land (t(\psi)^\Box_b \land (\langle U \rangle \not\Box T)))))$,

  - $\text{chop}3^\Box_a \overset{\text{def}}{=} ((t(\varphi)^\Box_a \land (\langle U \rangle \not\Box T)) \ast t(\psi)^\Box_a)$.

Lemma 4.3.4. Let $\alpha \geq 1, \Sigma = [1, \alpha], \varphi$ be a PITL$_\Sigma$ formula and $t(\varphi)^\Box$ be its translation in MLH. We have $\varphi$ is satisfiable iff $t(\varphi)^\Box$ is satisfiable.

The proof goes as in the case for the direct translation into 1SL2($\ast$) since the modal subformulae express exactly the same properties. Therefore, we can refine Theorem 4.2.7 as follows.

Theorem 4.3.5. The satisfiability problem for MLH($\ast$) is decidable but not elementary recursive.

Interestingly, we do not know the decidability status for full MLH (i.e., with the magic wand operator).

4.4 Monadic Second-Order Logic

We have seen that 1SL($\ast$) is decidable with non-elementary recursive complexity (actually two variables suffice). Below, we briefly explain why decidability comes from the decidability of 1MSOL and we provide a property that can separate the expressive power of 1SL($\ast$) and 1MSOL.

First, note that 1MSOL on memory states with one record field is decidable by taking advantage of [Rab69, BGG97]. Indeed, the weak monadic second-order theory of unary functions is the theory over structures of the form $(\Sigma, f, \sim)$ where $\Sigma$ is a countable domain, $f$ is a unary function, and $\sim$ is equality. Weakness means that quantifications are over finite sets.
This theory is decidable, see e.g. [BGG97, Corollary 7.2.11]. Since it is possible to express that $\mathcal{D}$ is infinite and to simulate that $\mathcal{f}$ is a partial function with finite domain, one can specify that $(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{f}, =)$ augmented with a first-order valuation is isomorphic to a heap. It is then possible to define a simple translation $tr_P(\cdot)$, computable in logarithmic space, such that a 1MSOL sentence $\varphi$ is satisfiable iff

$$\neg \exists P \forall u P(u) \land \exists P \ tr_P(\varphi)$$

is satisfiable in the weak monadic second-order theory of one unary function. See details in [BDL12]. Using a similar technique, it is possible to translate 1SL($\ast$) into 1MSOL. Any formula $\varphi$ in 1SL($\ast$) is satisfiable iff

$$\exists P (\forall u P(u) \iff (\exists u' u \hookrightarrow u')) \land tr_P(\varphi)$$

is satisfiable where $tr_P(\cdot)$ is defined with the following clauses:

1. $tr_P(u \hookrightarrow u') \overset{\text{def}}{=} P(u) \land u \hookrightarrow u'$
2. $tr_P(u = u') \overset{\text{def}}{=} u = u'$
3. $tr_P(\varphi \ast \psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists Q, Q' (P = Q \uplus Q') \land tr_Q(\varphi) \land tr_Q(\psi)$

where $P = Q \uplus Q'$ is an abbreviation for $\forall u (P(u) \iff (Q(u) \lor Q'(u))) \land \neg (Q(u) \land Q'(u))$. We leave out the Boolean connectives and first-order quantification, for which $tr_P$ is homomorphic.

**Theorem 4.4.1.** [BDL12, Corollary 3.3] The satisfiability problem for 1SL($\ast$) is decidable.

As conjectured in [BDL08], we have the following separation result.

**Proposition 4.4.2.** [AD09, Corollary 5.3] (see also [Ant10]) 1SL($\ast$) is strictly less expressive than 1MSOL.

A standard tool to show non-expressibility in first-order logic or in second-order logic is to use Ehrenfeucht-Fraïssé games, see e.g. [Lib04] (called EF-games in the sequel). These games have been adapted for some versions of separation logic, see e.g. [AD09, Ant10] based on similar games on spatial logics [DGG04, Mar06, DGG07]. In [AD09, Ant10], using EF-games, it is shown that there is no formula in 1SL($\ast$) that characterises the forests of binary trees such that there is one binary tree whose number of leaves is a multiple of 3.
Even though the principle of the method with EF-games is standard, the proof is quite complex and tedious, since it requires designing two families of heaps, to define an adequate strategy for the Duplicator player and to show that the strategy does the job, see e.g. [Ant10] for most of the details as well as for additional bibliographical references. In particular, Duplicator has a winning strategy for a game on \((h_1, h_2)\) with rank \(r\) iff \(h_1\) and \(h_2\) agree on all formulae of 1SL(*) of rank \(r\). See [Ant10] for more details about the notion of game and rank, for instance.

By way of example, we explain below why the above-mentioned property can be expressed in 1MSOL. First, let us express in 1SL(*) that the heap is a forest of binary trees, which entails that this can be stated in 1MSOL too. It is sufficient to state that every location has at most two predecessors and every location \(l\) can reach a non-allocated location (the root of the tree to which \(l\) belongs too if \(l\) is in the heap domain):

\[
\forall u (\#u \leq 2 \land \exists \overline{u} (\text{reach}(u, \overline{u}) \land \neg \text{alloc}(\overline{u}))).
\]

Note that the quantification above is fine even when \(u\) is not in the heap domain (take the value for \(u\) to witness the satisfaction of \(\exists \overline{u} (\text{reach}(u, \overline{u}) \land \neg \text{alloc}(\overline{u}))\)). In order to express in 1MSOL that there is a binary tree whose number of leaves is a multiple of 3, we first identify the locations of the tree (via the second-order variable \(P\)), we label each location of the tree by either \(P_0\), \(P_1\) and \(P_2\) (depending on the number of leaves (modulo 3) below the location) and we state consistency constraints (obviously simulating the behavior of some bottom-up three-state tree automaton) and finally we require that the root of the tree is labelled by \(P_0\). The formula defined below assumes that the heap is already known as a forest of binary trees.

\[
\exists u (\neg \text{alloc}(u) \land \#u \geq 1) \land \\
\exists P, P_0, P_1, P_2 ((\forall \overline{u} P(\overline{u}) \Leftrightarrow \text{reach}(u, u)) \land (P = P_0 \uplus P_1 \uplus P_2) \land P_0(u) \land \\
(\forall \overline{u} (P(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u} = 0) \Rightarrow P_1(\overline{u})) \land \\
(\forall \overline{u}, \overline{u}' ((\overline{u} \Leftarrow \overline{u}') \land P(\overline{u}) \land \#\overline{u}' = 1) \Rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=0}^{2} (P_i(\overline{u}) \Leftrightarrow P_i(\overline{u}')) \land \\
\bigwedge_{i,j,k\in\{0,1,2\},i\neq j+k} (\forall \overline{u}, \overline{u}', \overline{u}'' (P_j(\overline{u}') \land P_k(\overline{u}'')) \land (\overline{u}' \neq \overline{u}'') \land (\overline{u} \Leftarrow \overline{u}') \land (\overline{u}'' \Leftarrow \overline{u}) \Rightarrow P_i(\overline{u})))
\]

Note that we used a shortcut formula \((P = P_0 \uplus P_1 \uplus P_2)\) to state that the interpretation of \(P\) is the disjoint union of the interpretation of \(P_0, P_1\) and \(P_2\), details are omitted.
4.5 Exercises

Exercise 4.1. Given $\alpha \geq 1$, define a formula $mp(u)$ that holds true on $(\alpha, 1)$-fishbone heaps whenever $u$ is interpreted as a location on the main path.

Exercise 4.2. Assuming that $\text{card}(\Sigma) \geq 2$, show that computing $t(\varphi)$ (in Section 4.2.3) may require exponential time in the worst-case.

Exercise 4.3. Show Lemma [4.2.3]

Exercise 4.4. With the abbreviation $[U]$ introduced in Section 4.3, show that $\mathcal{M}, t \models [U] \varphi$ iff for all $t' \in \mathbb{N}$, we have $\mathcal{M}, t' \models \varphi$.

Exercise 4.5. Show that the formula below holds true on heaps that are made of a (finite) collection of trees in which each node has branching-degree at most two.

$$\forall u (\#u \leq 2 \land \exists \bar{u} (\text{reach}(u, \bar{u}) \land \neg \text{alloc}(\bar{u})))$$

Exercise 4.6. Design a formula in 1MSOL that characterises the forests of binary trees such that there is one tree whose number of leaves is a multiple of 5.

Exercise 4.7. Let $SL'(\ast)$ be the extension of $1SL(\ast)$ in which the separating implication can used but only in a very restricted way, typically in formulae of the form $((\text{size} \leq k) \land \varphi) \Rightarrow \varphi'$. Show that the satisfiability problem for $SL'(\ast)$ is decidable by using the decidability of $1SL(\ast)$. 
Chapter 5

DECISION PROCEDURES

Contents

5.1 Direct Versus Translation Approach ........................................ 139
   5.1.1 Direct approach versus translation for deciding modal logics .......... 139
   5.1.2 Translation versus specialised algorithms for separation logic .......... 139
   5.1.3 The SMT framework ........................................ 140

5.2 Translation Into a Reachability Logic ...................................... 141
   5.2.1 A target logic combining reachability and sets ...................... 142
   5.2.2 A variant separation logic interpreted on GRASS-models .......... 145
   5.2.3 A logarithmic-space translation .................................. 146

5.3 Direct Approach: An Example ............................................... 149
   5.3.1 Expressiveness ........................................ 150
   5.3.2 A model-checking decision procedure ................................ 157

5.4 Translation into QBF .................................................. 162

5.5 Bibliographical References about Proof Systems ......................... 166

5.6 Exercises ........................................................ 167

Numerous decision procedures have been designed for fragments of separation logics, from analytic methods \[GM10, HCGT14\] to translation to theories handled by SMT solvers \[PWZ13, PR13, BRK+15\], passing via graph-based algorithms \[HIOP13\]. However, the framework of satisfiability modulo theories
(SMT), strongly related to the mechanisation of the problems SAT and QBF, remains probably the most promising one to develop decision procedures dedicated to reasoning tasks for separation logics. This chapter is dedicated to present several distinct ways to decide fragments of separation logics.

Section 5.1 briefly presents the standard dichotomy between the direct approach and the translation-based approach to decide non-classical logics. In Section 5.2, we present a translation from a symbolic heaps fragment of separation logic into the logic GRASS, following developments in [PWZ13]. In Section 5.3, we establish that the satisfiability and model-checking problems for 1SL0 can be solved in polynomial space by using a non-deterministic algorithm. An equivalence relation on memory states with finite index is designed so that infinity involved in the interpretation of the magic wand operator can be tamed finitely. Then, we characterise precisely the expressiveness of 1SL0 and it is the key step to show a small heap property. Section 5.4 presents a translation from 1SL0 into QBF and into a PSPACE fragment of first-order logic by encoding the quantifications in the algorithm from Section 5.3. The chapter concludes by Section 5.5 in which bibliographical references about the design of proof systems are provided.

**Highlights of the chapter**

1. Presentation of the NP upper bound for the satisfiability problem for SLLB relying on an SMT-based translation into the logic GRASS defined from the combination of two logical theories [PWZ13] (Corollary 5.2.8).

2. Characterisation of the expressiveness of 1SL0 by using Boolean combinations of test formulae (Theorem 5.3.7). This follows and refines developments from [Yan01, Loz04a, DGLWM14].

3. Presentation of the PSPACE upper bound for the satisfiability and model-checking problems for 1SL0 (Theorem 5.3.11) based on techniques developed in [Yan01, COY01, Loz04a].
5.1 Direct Versus Translation Approach

5.1.1 Direct approach versus translation for deciding modal logics

In order to mechanise modal logics, there exist at least two main approaches with well-identified motivations. The direct approach consists in building specialised proof systems for the logics and requires building new theorem provers but, it has the advantage to design fine-tuned tools and to propose plenty of optimizations. The development of tableaux-based provers for modal logics following the seminal work [Fit83] perfectly illustrates this trend (see also [GHSS14]). By contrast, the translation approach consists in reducing decision problems for the original logics to similar problems for logics that have already well-established theorem provers (see e.g. [dNSH00]). Its main advantage is to use existing tools and therefore to focus only on the translations, that are usually much simpler to implement. For example, translation of modal logics into first-order logic, with the explicit goal to mechanise such logics is an approach that has been introduced in [Mor76] (see also [Fin75, vB76, Moo77]) and it has been intensively developed over the years, see e.g. [ONdRG01] for an overview.

5.1.2 Translation versus specialised algorithms for separation logic

Despite its young age, one can observe that the mechanisation of separation logic follows a similar dichotomy. This is all the more obvious nowadays since there are a lot of activities to develop verification methods with decision procedures for fragments of practical use, see e.g. [CHO+11]. Many decision procedures have been designed for fragments of separation logics or abstract variants, from analytic methods [GM10, HCGT14] to translation to theories handled by SMT solvers [LQ08, PWZ13], passing via graph-based algorithms [HIOP13]. The translation approach has been already advocated in [CGH05] and in [Hag04, Chapter 8] in which propositional kSL0 is translated into a fragment of classical logic that can be decided in polynomial space (see Section 5.4 for an alternative presentation of that result). However, the framework of satisfiability modulo theories (SMT) remains probably the most promising one to develop decision procedures dedicated to reasoning tasks for separation logics, see e.g. [BPS09, RBHC07, PR13, PWZ13]. It is worth noting that the verification of programs
that manipulate linked-list structures can be also done with a SAT solver, when
the assertions are written in some restricted logical formalism, see a remarkable
example in [IBI+13]. In Section 5.4, we illustrate why QBF solvers (see e.g.
[LB10, HSB14]) can be useful too.

5.1.3 The SMT framework

Deciding logical formulae within a given logical theory is ubiquitous in computer
science and the works around Satisfiability Modulo Theories (SMT) are dedi-
cated to solve this problem by providing methods, proof systems and solvers in
order to be able to decide as much theories as possible, as well as their com-

A nice feature of such solvers is their ability to combine distinct theories al-

Some strongly related work can be also found in [PR13] in which the con-

140

Demri, Deters: Logical Investigations on Separation Logics (Draft) – September 8, 2015– ESSLLI’15
CHAPTER 5. DECISION PROCEDURES

Separation logic that have been considered (roughly, symbolic heaps with recursive definitions, see also Sections 2.2 and 1.3.3). By way of examples, we list below solvers for separation logics involving SMT-based or SAT-based tools [SC14].

1. Asterix [PR13] is a tool for solving entailment problem for symbolic heaps fragment augmented with theories richer than the one with pure equalities only that relies on SMT solving technology (Z3). This provides a generalization to what has been done in [PWZ13], even though results in [PWZ13] are not restricted to the theory of pure equalities.

2. SLSAT [BFGN14, SC14] is a tool for solving the satisfiability problem for the so-called SLRD+ fragment with general defined predicates.

3. SPEN [ESS13] is a solver that deals with satisfiability and entailment problems for SLRD+ for a subclass of recursive definitions. The solver MiniSAT is also used to resolve Boolean abstraction of separation logic formulae.

In order to solve decision problems for separation logics, there is indeed a great diversity of techniques. As we have seen, there are reductions to SAT or SMT problems [PR13, BFGN14, SC14, ESS13] but other approaches exist, for instance by reduction into tree automata membership/inclusion problems [ESS13, IRV14]. In the rest of the chapter, two approaches are presented in details.

5.2 Translation Into a Reachability Logic

In this section, we present a reduction from the satisfiability problem for SLLB into the logic GRASS, following the results from [PWZ13, PWZ14]. Decidability and even NP-completeness of the satisfiability problem for GRASS are obtained by a reduction to a slight variant of the combination of two theories, following a standard approach in SMT, see e.g. [BT14b]. Interestingly, the decision procedure uses two standard techniques related to SMT: the combination of theories (see e.g. [NO79, TZ04]) and the handling of quantifiers (see e.g. [BRK+15] for local theory extensions). Other examples of translations can be found in [Hag04, CGH05, CHO+11, HIOP13, SC14] but because of lack of space, we focus on the current one that is very promising to use further SMT solvers in order to decide decision problems for fragments of separation logics. Actually, the work [PWZ13] goes much beyond what is presented in this section.
5.2. TRANSLATION INTO A REACHABILITY LOGIC

5.2.1 A target logic combining reachability and sets

The logic of graph reachability and stratified sets GRASS [PWZ13] is defined below as the disjoint combination of a theory of reachability in function graphs (see e.g. [LQ08, WMK11]) and a theory of stratified sets (see e.g. [Zar03]). This means that, on the top of a theory of elements, a theory of sets is defined so that the elements satisfied another theory. In that way, the theory of stratified sets is two-level. Presently, the theory of elements is a theory about reachability. Consequently, the logic GRASS contains two sorts: a sort for locations and a sort for sets of locations. GRASS is presented as the quantifier-free kernel of a many-sorted first-order logic, following an approach that has been at heart of modern SMT solvers (see more definitions in [PWZ13, BT14b]). For the ease of presentation, and since we do not need the full generality of many-sorted first-order logic, our presentation of GRASS semantics is quite ad-hoc but the reader should keep in mind that a more orthodox presentation based on standard features of SMT can be found in [PWZ13].

Below, we present a translation from SLLB into the logic GRASS, following the results from [PWZ13]. The tool GRASShopper [PWZ14] implements a decision procedure for GRASS on top of the SMT solver Z3 [dMB08].

Formulae in GRASS are built from terms \( T \) denoting locations and terms \( S \) denoting sets of locations. Atomic formulae of type \( A \) state properties between locations whereas atomic formulae of type \( B \) state properties between locations and sets of locations. Finally, formulae of type \( R \) are Boolean combinations of atomic formulae of type \( A \). These syntactic objects are defined following the grammars below:

\[
\begin{align*}
T & ::= \ x \mid f(T) \\
A & ::= \ T = T \mid T \mathrel{\triangleright T} \\
R & ::= \ A \mid \neg R \mid R \land R \\
S & ::= \ X \mid \emptyset \mid S \setminus S \mid S \cup S \mid S \cap S \mid \{x.R\} \\
&B ::= \ S = S \mid T \in S \\
\varphi & ::= \ A \mid B \mid \neg \varphi \mid \varphi \land \varphi
\end{align*}
\]

The proviso in the definition of set comprehensions guarantees decidability of the logic GRASS. The term \( x \) is a variable from a countably infinite set of (program) variables whereas the term \( X \) is a set variable from an unspecified countably infinite set of such variables. By contrast, there is a single function symbol \( f \).
CHAPTER 5. DECISION PROCEDURES

Example 5.2.1. A formula of type $R$ is presented below:

$$(x_1 = f(x_2)) \land x_1 \rightarrow x_3.$$ 

An atomic formula of type $B$ is presented below:

$$f(f(x_1)) \in \{x. (x = x_1)\} \cap \{x'. (x' \rightarrow x_3)\}.$$ 

Now, let us define the models for the logic GRASS and let us explain how the formulae are interpreted on such semantical structures. A GRASS-model is a structure of the form $\mathcal{A} = (\mathcal{L}, h)$ such that

1. $\mathcal{L}$ is a non-empty set; for obvious reasons elements of $\mathcal{L}$ are called locations.
2. $h$ is a map $\mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}$ satisfying the conditions below.
   1. For all $l \in \mathcal{L}$, the set $\{l' \mid (l, l') \in h^*\}$ is finite where $h^*$ is the reflexive and transitive closure of the graph relation induced by the map $h$.
   2. Similarly, for all $l \in \mathcal{L}$, the set $\{l' \mid (l', l) \in h^*\}$ is finite.

The map $h$ corresponds to the interpretation of the function symbol $f$.

Even though the symbol `$h$' is also used to denote heaps, the map $h$ in a GRASS-model is not strictly speaking a heap (in the sense provided in Section 1.2.1). For instance, $\mathcal{L}$ is not necessarily equal to $\mathbb{N}$ and $h$ is a total function. Nevertheless, $h$ satisfies two finiteness conditions. However, the way the logic GRASS is defined and the semantics is presented allows to use results about the combination of theories to establish the NP upper bound of the satisfiability problem. Herein, we do not present the details of the NP upper bound for deciding GRASS since we view such a decision procedure as a blackbox. Indeed, in the translation-based approach, the essential work is to design a translation into a logical theory for which decidability/complexity is already established. However, it would be definitely interesting to present how works the decidability proof for GRASS satisfiability, but this is currently beyond the scope of this document.

The terms $T$ are interpreted as elements of $\mathcal{L}$ whereas the terms $S$ are interpreted as subsets of $\mathcal{L}$. More precisely, for any term $T$, $[T]_{\mathcal{A}, f}$ is an element of $\mathcal{L}$ following the clauses below ($f$ is a variable assignment):

$$[x]_{\mathcal{A}, f} \overset{\text{def}}{=} f(x)$$
$$[f(T)]_{\mathcal{A}, f} \overset{\text{def}}{=} h([T]_{\mathcal{A}, f}).$$
Similarly, for any term $S$, $[S]_{\mathcal{A},f}$ is a subset of $\mathcal{L}$ following the clauses below:

- $[X]_{\mathcal{A},f} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bar{f}(X)$
- $[\emptyset]_{\mathcal{A},f} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset$ (no syntactic difference between the constant ’$\emptyset$’ and the empty set)
- $[S_1 \circ S_2]_{\mathcal{A},f} \overset{\text{def}}{=} [S_1]_{\mathcal{A},f} \circ [S_2]_{\mathcal{A},f}$ ($0 \in \{\cup, \cap\}$)
- $[[x.R]]_{\mathcal{A},f} \overset{\text{def}}{=} \{l \mid A| = f[x\mapsto l]R\}$

where the satisfaction relation $|$ is defined below.

Despite the fact that the definition of $|$ uses the semantics map $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{A},f}$ and the other way around for set comprehension, these mutually recursive definitions are well-founded. So, given a variable assignment $\bar{f}$, the satisfaction relation $|$ for GRASS is defined as follows:

- $\mathcal{A} \models T_1 = T_2$ iff $[T_1]_{\mathcal{A},f} = [T_2]_{\mathcal{A},f}$
- $\mathcal{A} \models T_1 \rightarrow T_2$ iff $([T_1]_{\mathcal{A},f}, [T_2]_{\mathcal{A},f}) \in \mathcal{R}$ where $\mathcal{R} = \{(l, h(l)) \mid l \in \mathcal{L}, l \neq [T_2]_{\mathcal{A},f}\}$
- $\mathcal{A} \models S_1 = S_2$ iff $[S_1]_{\mathcal{A}} = [S_2]_{\mathcal{A}}$
- $\mathcal{A} \models T \in S$ iff $[T]_{\mathcal{A},f} \in [S]_{\mathcal{A},f}$
- $\mathcal{A} \models \neg \varphi$ iff not $\mathcal{A} \models \varphi$
- $\mathcal{A} \models \varphi_1 \wedge \varphi_2$ iff $\mathcal{A} \models \varphi_1$ and $\mathcal{A} \models \varphi_2$.

Clauses for equalities and for Boolean connectives are completely standard and therefore the only clause that may deserve a bit of explanations if for atomic formulae of the form $T_1 \rightarrow T_2$ if $[T_3]_{\mathcal{A},f}$ can be reached from $[T_1]_{\mathcal{A},f}$ by using the graph of $h$, with the proviso that the path does not visit an edge starting by the location $[T_2]_{\mathcal{A},f}$.

The satisfiability problem for GRASS takes as input a formula $\varphi$ and asks for the existence of a model $\mathcal{A}$ and a variable assignment $\bar{f}$ such that $\mathcal{A} \models \varphi$.

**Proposition 5.2.2.** [PWZ13] The satisfiability problem for GRASS is NP-complete.

The underlying theory of reachability in function graphs is not first-order definable not only because of the finiteness constraints on $h$ but also because transitive closure of relations is not first-order definable. Nevertheless, satisfiability problem for the quantifier-free fragment of that fragment can be shown in NP, see details in [TW13, Section 5]. Using Nelson-Oppen combination of the decision procedures for the two theories [NO79] (see also [TZ04]), the fact that both of

"Demri, Deters: Logical Investigations on Separation Logics (Draft) – September 8, 2015– ESSLLI’15"
them are stably infinite with respect to the location sort and other properties, one can obtain an NP decision procedure for GRASS; again we omit the details that can be found in [PWZ13, Appendix A]. So, the decision procedure for GRASS is obtained from the combination of the theory of reachability and the theory of stratified sets, but some additional work is required, for instance to get rid of set comprehension, see e.g. [PWZ13, Appendix A] (see also [BRK*15] for a more general approach using a lazy and finite instantiation of quantified axioms with the help of E-matching).

5.2.2 A variant separation logic interpreted on GRASS-models

Before designing the translation into GRASS, we introduce SLLB in which spatial formulae are interpreted precisely and equalities and disequalities are spatial formulae too. Spatial formulae $\varphi_s$ are defined as follows:

$$\varphi_s ::= (x_i = x_j) \mid \neg(x_i = x_j) \mid x_i \mapsto x_j \mid \text{sreach}(x_i, x_j) \mid \varphi_s \land \varphi_s$$

Formulae of SLLB are simply Boolean combinations of spatial formulae.

Models of SLLB are GRASS-models and as we have seen earlier, these are not exactly heaps. Probably, the major difference is due to the fact that the map $h$ in a GRASS-model is a total function and therefore to regain the semantics from separation logic, the finite domain is encoded by the interpretation of a set variable. Finiteness is guaranteed because the satisfaction relation $\models^X_\mathcal{A}$ (defined below) encodes a precise semantics parameterised by the set variable $X$. Below, we provide the definition of $\models^X_\mathcal{A}$; we omit the obvious clauses for the Boolean combinations of spatial formulae.

$$\begin{align*}
\mathcal{A} \models^X_i x_i &= x_j & \text{iff} & \mathcal{f}(x_i) = \mathcal{f}(x_j) \text{ and } \mathcal{f}(X) = \emptyset \\
\mathcal{A} \models^X_i \neg(x_i = x_j) & \text{iff} & \mathcal{f}(x_i) \neq \mathcal{f}(x_j) \text{ and } \mathcal{f}(X) = \emptyset \\
\mathcal{A} \models^X_i x_i \mapsto x_j & \text{iff} & h(\mathcal{f}(x_i)) = \mathcal{f}(x_j) \text{ and } \mathcal{f}(X) = \{\mathcal{f}(x_i)\} \\
\mathcal{A} \models^X_i \varphi_s^1 \land \varphi_s^2 & \text{iff} & \text{there are } X_1, X_2 \text{ such that } \mathcal{f}(X) = X_1 \cup X_2, \\
& & & \mathcal{A} \models^X_{[x_i \mapsto X_1]} \varphi_s^1 \text{ and } \mathcal{A} \models^X_{[x_i \mapsto X_2]} \varphi_s^2 \\
\mathcal{A} \models^X_i \text{sreach}(x_i, x_j) & \text{iff} & \text{either } \mathcal{f}(x_i) = \mathcal{f}(x_j) \text{ and } \mathcal{f}(X) = \emptyset, \text{ or } \\
& & & \text{there is } n \geq 1 \text{ such that } h^n(\mathcal{f}(x_i)) = \mathcal{f}(x_j) \text{ and } \\
& & & \mathcal{f}(X) = \{\mathcal{f}(x_i), h(\mathcal{f}(x_i)), \ldots, h^{n-1}(\mathcal{f}(x_i))\}.
\end{align*}$$

The (possibly empty) set of locations $\mathcal{f}(X)$ is called the footprint of $\varphi$ when $\mathcal{A} \models^X_\mathcal{A} \varphi$ and it corresponds to the (unique) domain of the underlying heap. For instance, the formula $(x_1 = x_3) \land (x_2 \mapsto x_2)$ is satisfiable unlike $(x_1 = x_3) \land (x_2 \mapsto x_2)$. Lemma 5.2.3 below guarantees finiteness and unicity of the footprint.

Demri, Deters: Logical Investigations on Separation Logics (Draft) – September 8, 2015– ESSLLI’15
Lemma 5.2.3. Let $\varphi_s$ be a spatial formula, $A$ be a GRASS-model and $\bar{f}, \bar{f}'$ be variable assignments that differ at most for the set variable $X$. If $A \models^X_\bar{f} \varphi_s$ and $A \models^X_{\bar{f}} \varphi_s$ then $\bar{f} = \bar{f}'$ and $f(X)$ is finite.

The proof is left as Exercise 5.3. So, in this section, we have followed a precise interpretation of the spatial formulae and a memory state $(s, h)$ in the usual sense in separation logic is encoded by a structure $(N, h', f, X)$ where

1. $(N, h')$ is a GRASS-model,
2. $s$ and $\bar{f}$ agree on the program variables and $f(X) = \text{dom}(h)$,
3. $h'$ restricted to $f(X)$ is equal to $h$.

We write GRASS-FO to denote the first-order extension of quantifier-free GRASS by adding existential quantification over set variables: $A \models_{\bar{f}} \exists Y \varphi$ iff there is $X \subseteq L$ such that $A \models_{[Y \mapsto X]} \varphi$. Actually, in the translation described below, existential quantifications shall occur only in front of the formulae obtained by translation and therefore its satisfiability status is identical to the satisfiability status of the formulae obtained by removing the existential quantifications. So, the formulae in GRASS-FO are purely instrumental in this presentation and the logic GRASS-FO is not studied for itself.

In Lemma 5.2.4 below, we state a few properties that are useful to show the correctness of the forthcoming translation but these are quite standard in first-order logic and therefore the proofs are left as Exercise 5.4.

Lemma 5.2.4.

(I) Let $\varphi_1$ and $\varphi_2$ be GRASS-FO formulae so that $Y_1$ is not free in $\varphi_2$ and $Y_2$ is not free in $\varphi_1$.

Then, $(\exists Y_1 \varphi_1) \circ (\exists Y_2 \varphi_2)$ is logically equivalent to $(\exists Y_1, Y_2) (\varphi_1 \circ \varphi_2)$ with $\circ \in \{\land, \lor\}$.

(II) Given a GRASS-FO formula of the form $\exists Y \varphi$, we have $\varphi$ is satisfiable iff $\exists Y \varphi$ is satisfiable.

5.2.3 A logarithmic-space translation

Given an atomic formula $\varphi$ and a (fresh) set variable $Y$, we introduce in the table below the formulae $\psi_1$ and $\psi_2(Y)$ that are used in the translation from SLLB into GRASS (implicitly these formulae are parameterised by $\varphi$). The formula $\psi_1(Y)$ encodes the reachability constraints expressed by $\varphi$ whereas $\psi_2(Y)$ takes care of the footprint.
CHAPTER 5. DECISION PROCEDURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atomic formula $\varphi$</th>
<th>$\psi_1$</th>
<th>$\psi_2(Y)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$x_i = x_j$</td>
<td>$x_i = x_j$</td>
<td>$Y = \emptyset$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x_i \neq x_j$</td>
<td>$x_i \neq x_j$</td>
<td>$Y = \emptyset$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x_i \mapsto x_j$</td>
<td>$\mathbf{f}(x_i) = x_j$</td>
<td>$Y = {y. (x_i = y)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{sreach}(x_i, x_j)$</td>
<td>$x_i \mapsto x_j$</td>
<td>$Y = {x. (x_i \rightarrow x) \land x \neq x_j}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let $X$ be a distinguished set variable that serves for the footprint. The translation $tr$ defined below from SLLB formulae into GRASS-FO formulae is implicitly parameterised by $X$. Without any loss of generality, we can assume that the SLLB formulae are in negation normal form (binary connectives are $\land$ and $\lor$, and negation occurs only in front of spatial formulae). The map $tr$ is homomorphic for $\lor$ and $\land$ and its definition is completed by the clauses below:

$$tr(q_1 \lor \cdots \lor q_n) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists Y_1 \cdots Y_n ((\psi_1 \land \cdots \land \psi_n \land \bigwedge_{i \neq i'} Y_i \cap Y_{i'} = \emptyset) \land ((\psi_1(Y_1) \land \cdots \land \psi_n(Y_n) \land X = Y_1 \cup \cdots \cup Y_n),$$

where the formulae $\psi_1(Y_i)$ and $\psi_n(Y_i)$ are defined from the previous table with the atomic formula $q_i$, and $Y_1, \ldots, Y_n$ are fresh set variables. Similarly,

$$tr(\neg(q_1 \lor \cdots \lor q_n)) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists Y_1 \cdots Y_n \neg((\psi_1 \land \cdots \land \psi_n \land \bigwedge_{i \neq i'} Y_i \cap Y_{i'} = \emptyset) \land ((\psi_1(Y_1) \land \cdots \land \psi_n(Y_n) \land X = Y_1 \cup \cdots \cup Y_n).$$

So both translations quantify existentially over set variables and the only difference is the presence of the negation in front of one of the main conjuncts. This requires some explanation, which is provided below.

It is worth observing that for all GRASS-models $\mathcal{A}$ and for all variable assignments $\mathfrak{f}$, there is exactly one tuple $(X_1, \ldots, X_n)$ in $\mathbb{L}^n$ such that $\mathcal{A} \models_{\mathfrak{g}} (\psi_1(Y_1) \land \cdots \land \psi_n(Y_n) \land X = Y_1 \cup \cdots \cup Y_n$ where $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{f}[Y_1 \mapsto X_1, \ldots, Y_n \mapsto X_n]$. Thanks to that property that is closely related to preciseness, we can get advantage of the property below.

**Lemma 5.2.5.** Let $\chi_1$ and $\chi_2(X, Y_1, \ldots, Y_n)$ be GRASS formulae such that for all GRASS-models $\mathcal{A}$ and for all variable assignments $\mathfrak{f}$, there is exactly one tuple $(X_1, \ldots, X_n)$ in $\mathbb{L}^n$ such that $\mathcal{A} \models_{\mathfrak{g}} \chi_2(X, Y_1, \ldots, Y_n)$ where $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{f}[Y_1 \mapsto X_1, \ldots, Y_n \mapsto X_n].$ Then, for all GRASS-models $\mathcal{A}$ and all variable assignments $\mathfrak{f}$, the statements below are equivalent:
5.2. TRANSLATION INTO A REACHABILITY LOGIC

(I) \( \mathcal{A} \models \neg(\exists Y_1 \cdots Y_n \chi_1 \land \chi_2(X, Y_1, \ldots, Y_n)) \),

(II) \( \mathcal{A} \models (\exists Y_1 \cdots Y_n \neg \chi_1 \land \chi_2(X, Y_1, \ldots, Y_n)) \).

The proof of Lemma 5.2.5 is left as Exercise 5.5 and requires standard arguments from first-order logic. Consequently, \( tr(\neg(\phi_1^s \ast \cdots \ast \phi_n^s)) \) is logically equivalent to the negation of \( tr(\phi_1^s \ast \cdots \ast \phi_n^s) \) even though both translations involve existential quantifications. This is a key property established in [PWZ13]. Let \( T(\phi) \) be the GRASS formula obtained from \( tr(\phi) \) by removing the sequences of existential quantifications of the form \( \exists Y_1 \cdots Y_n \).

**Example 5.2.6.** The formula \( \phi = (x_1 \mapsto x_2) \land x_1 = x_3 \) is not satisfiable and its translation \( T(\phi) \) in GRASS is given below:

\[
(f(x_1) = x_2 \land Y_1 = \{y.(x_1 = y)\} \land X = Y_1) \land (x_1 = x_3 \land Y_2 = \emptyset \land X = Y_2).
\]

By contrast, the formula \( \phi' = (x_1 \neq x_3) \ast (x_1 \mapsto x_3) \ast (x_3 \mapsto x_3) \) is satisfiable and its translation \( T(\phi') \) is the following:

\[
(x_1 \neq x_3 \land f(x_1) = x_3 \land f(x_3) = x_3 \land (Y_1 \cap Y_2) = \emptyset \land (Y_1 \cap Y_3) = \emptyset \land (Y_2 \cap Y_3) = \emptyset) \land
Y_1 = \emptyset \land Y_2 = \{y.(x_1 = y)\} \land Y_3 = \{y.(x_3 = y)\} \land (X = Y_1 \cup Y_2 \cup Y_3).
\]

By Lemma 5.2.4, \( T(\phi) \) is satisfiable iff \( tr(\phi) \) is satisfiable. It remains to show that the satisfiability status of \( tr(\phi) \) is equivalent to the satisfiability status of \( \phi \).

**Lemma 5.2.7.** Let \( \phi \) be an SLLB formula in negation normal form, \( \mathcal{A} \) be a GRASS-model, \( \bar{\hat{\imath}} \) be a variable assignment and \( X \) be a distinguished set variable. Then \( \mathcal{A} \models \bar{\hat{\imath}} \phi \) iff \( \mathcal{A} \models tr(\phi) \).

Consequently, there is a logarithmic-space reduction from the satisfiability problem for SLLB into the satisfiability problem for GRASS. Given an SLLB formula \( \phi \), we perform the following operations:

1. Compute \( \phi' \) obtained from \( \phi \) by pushing the negations inwards as much as possible so that \( \phi' \) is an equivalent formula in negation normal form.

2. Compute \( T(\phi') \) by using the recursive definition for \( tr(\phi') \) but we omit the prefixes of the form \( \exists Y_1 \cdots Y_n \) on-the-fly.
The proof of Lemma 5.2.7 is left as Exercise 5.7 and it can be done by a standard structural induction. In the induction step, the cases for Boolean connectives $\land$ and $\lor$ are by an easy verification whereas the base case for atomic formulae of the form $\neg(\phi_1^s \cdots \phi_n^s)$ follows immediately from the base case for atomic formulae of the form $\phi_1^s \cdots \phi_n^s$ thanks to Lemma 5.2.5. So, the main difficulty in the proof is to consider the translation for atomic formulae of the form $(\phi_1^s \cdots \phi_n^s)$ but this is not very difficult since then the translation simply internalises the SLLB precise semantics into GRASS-FO.

**Corollary 5.2.8.** The satisfiability, validity and entailment problems for SLLB can be solved in NP.

NP-hardness is an obvious consequence that SLLB contains equality constraints and it is closed under Boolean connectives.

We have seen that the logics SLLB and GRASS have quite a lot of similarities and it is legitimate to wonder why to bother to introduce the logic GRASS as it has been done in [PWZ13]. Indeed, the models are quite similar, the encoding of the reachability constraints and footprint is quite clear. However, the decidability proof for GRASS (omitted in this document) invokes results about the combination of theories along the lines of the seminal work of Nelson-Oppen (stably infinity of the theories) but also about elimination of implicit quantifiers or set comprehensions. That is why, the way GRASS has been designed allows to use material about the decidability of combined theories (we recall that the details can be found in [PWZ13]) and to take advantage of the SMT framework for combinations with other theories. Alternatively, the developments in this section can be viewed as a piece of evidence that SLLB can be rephrased to fit the SMT framework, as far as several decision problems are concerned (satisfiability, abduction, etc).

### 5.3 Direct Approach: An Example

In this section, we show that the satisfiability and model-checking problems for 1SL0 (the propositional version of 1SL without quantifiers and quantified variables) can be solved in polynomial space. An equivalence relation on memory states with finite index is designed so that infinity involved in the interpretation of the magic wand operator can be tamed finitely [Yan01, Loz04b]. This allows to characterise precisely the expressiveness of 1SL0 and it is the key step to show a small heap property. The developments made in this section are mainly inspired
5.3. **DIRECT APPROACH: AN EXAMPLE**

from material and results in [Yan01, COY01, Loz04a] (see also some subsequent developments in [DGLWM14]).

5.3.1 **Expressiveness**

Given \( q \geq 1 \) and \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N} \), we write \( \text{Test}(q, \alpha) \) to denote the following set of atomic formulae:

1. \( x_i = x_j, \ x_i \hookrightarrow x_j \) with \( i, j \in [1, q] \).
2. \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \) with \( i \in [1, q] \).
3. \( \text{size} \geq \beta \) with \( \beta \in [0, \alpha] \).

Here, \( \text{alloc}(x_i) \) and \( \text{size} \geq \beta \) are not anymore shortcuts as defined in Section 1.2.2 but these expressions should be understood as primitive formulae (at least to build Boolean combinations from it). We recall that \( \text{size} \geq \beta \) holds true when the heap domain has cardinal at least \( \beta \). Hence, formulae from \( \text{Test}(q, \alpha) \) state very basic properties on memory states.

We can also use \( \text{size}_q \geq \beta \) as an abbreviation for the Boolean combination of test formulae defined below that characterises the memory states such that the cardinal of the heap domain is at least \( \beta \) even if we remove from it the locations that are interpreted by a program variable among \( x_1, \ldots, x_q \):

\[
\bigvee_{X \subseteq \{x_1, \ldots, x_q\}} \left( \bigwedge_{x \in X} \text{alloc}(x) \right) \land \left( \bigwedge_{x \in \{x_1, \ldots, x_q\} \setminus X} \neg \text{alloc}(x) \right) \land \text{size} \geq (\text{card}(X) + \beta).
\]

Alternatively, we write \( \text{Test}'(q, \alpha) \) to denote the variant set of \( \text{Test}(q, \alpha) \) in which test formulae of the form \( \text{size} \geq \beta \) are replaced by \( \text{size}_q \geq \beta \) (understood as primitive formulae this time).

**Lemma 5.3.1.** Let \((s, b)\) be a memory state and \( b \subseteq b' \) (i.e. \( b' \) is a conservative extension of \( b \)). For all \( \psi \in \text{Test}'(q, \alpha) \), \((s, b) \models \psi \) implies \((s, b') \models \psi \).

The proof is left as Exercise 5.8. We write \((s, b) \approx_{\\alpha}^q (s', b') \) \( (q \geq 1, \alpha \in \mathbb{N}) \) whenever the memory states \((s, b)\) and \((s', b')\) agree on the satisfaction of the test formulae in \( \text{Test}'(q, \alpha) \). The equivalence relation is actually an indistinguishability relation with respect to a finite set of formulae parameterised by syntactic resources based on \( q \) and \( \alpha \). Note that, above \( \text{size}_q \geq \beta \) is used instead of \( \text{size} \geq \beta \), which shall simplify a few forthcoming technical developments (this is therefore a bit different from what has been done in [Yan01, Loz04a, BDL09] for instance). However, this is irrelevant for expressiveness, see also Exercise 5.13.
CHAPTER 5. DECISION PROCEDURES

Lemma 5.3.2. Let $q \geq 1$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $\approx^q_{\alpha+1} \subseteq \approx^q_{\alpha}$ and $\approx^{q+1}_{\alpha} \subseteq \approx^q_{\alpha}$.

The proof is left as Exercise 5.9. Below, we establish two technical lemmas that guarantee that $\approx^q_{\alpha}$ behave properly. These are essential properties to establish forthcoming Theorem 5.3.6.

Lemma 5.3.3. Let $\alpha, \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ and $(s, h), (s', h')$ be memory states such that $(s, h) \approx^q_{\alpha_1} (s', h')$. For all heaps $h_1, h_2$ such that $h = h_1 \cup h_2$, there are heaps $h'_1, h'_2$ such that $h' = h'_1 \cup h'_2$, $(s, h_1) \approx^q_{\alpha_1} (s', h'_1)$ and $(s, h_2) \approx^q_{\alpha_2} (s', h'_2)$.

Proof. Let $\alpha, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, (s, h), (s', h')$ and $h_1, h_2$ be defined as in the statement. In order to build $h'_1$ and $h'_2$, let us make a few basic observations.

1. Since $(s, h) \approx^q_{\alpha} (s', h')$, for all $i \in [1, q]$, $s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h)$ iff $s'(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h')$.

2. Let $C_{\approx}(s, h)$ be the cardinal of the set $\text{dom}(h) \setminus \{s(x_1), \ldots, s(x_q)\}$. We have $C_{\approx}(s, h) = C_{\approx}(s, h_1) + C_{\approx}(s, h_2)$.

Let us define explicitly the heap $h'_1$ and therefore $h'_2$ is defined as the complement heap with respect to the heap $h'$. Moreover, we only need to specify explicitly the domain of $h'_1$ since the images are those from $h'$. There is only one exception in the Case 4 below in which $h'_2$ is defined explicitly instead.

- For every $i \in [1, q]$, if $s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h_1)$, then $s'(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h'_1)$ by definition.

- So, for every $i \in [1, q]$, $s'(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h'_1)$ iff $s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h_1)$ and therefore $s'(x'_i) \in \text{dom}(h'_2)$ iff $s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(h_2)$.

The heap $h'_1$ is further populated depending on cardinality constraints.

Case 1: $C_{\approx}(s, h) \leq \alpha$.

Since $(s, h) \approx^q_{\alpha} (s', h')$, we have $C_{\approx}(s', h') = C_{\approx}(s, h) \leq \alpha$ too. Let $\beta_1 = C_{\approx}(s, h_1)$. Since $C_{\approx}(s', h') = C_{\approx}(s, h)$ and $\beta_1 \leq C_{\approx}(s', h')$, there are $\beta_1$ locations $l_{\beta_1}$ in $\text{dom}(h') \setminus \{s'(x_1), \ldots, s'(x_q)\}$. Then $\{l_1, \ldots, l_{\beta_1}\} \subseteq \text{dom}(h'_1)$ by definition. This concludes the construction of $h'_1$.

Case 2: $C_{\approx}(s, h) > \alpha$. $C_{\approx}(s, h_1) \geq \alpha_1$ and $C_{\approx}(s, h_2) \geq \alpha_2$.

Let $\beta_1 = \min(\alpha_1, C_{\approx}(s, h_1)) = \alpha_1$. Since $\min(\alpha, C_{\approx}(s, h)) = \min(\alpha, C_{\approx}(s', h')) = \alpha$ and $\beta_1 \leq \min(\alpha, C_{\approx}(s, h))$, then $\beta_1 \leq \min(\alpha, C_{\approx}(s', h'))$. Let $l_1 < \cdots < l_{\beta_1}$ be the $\beta_1$ smallest locations in $\text{dom}(h') \setminus \{s'(x_1), \ldots, s'(x_q)\}$ (for the usual linear ordering on $\mathbb{N}$). Then $\{l_1, \ldots, l_{\beta_1}\} \subseteq \text{dom}(h'_1)$ by definition. This concludes the construction of $h'_1$.
5.3. DIRECT APPROACH: AN EXAMPLE

Case 2: \( C_\forall(s, h) > \alpha \), \( C_\forall(s, h_1) < \alpha_1 \) and \( C_\forall(s, h_2) > \alpha_2 \).

Let \( \beta_1 = C_\forall(s, h_1) \). Since \( \min(\alpha, C_\forall(s, h)) = \min(\alpha, C_\forall(s', h')) = \alpha \), \( \beta_1 \leq \alpha \) and \( \beta_1 \leq \min(\alpha, C_\forall(s', h')) \), let \( l_1 < \cdots < l_{\beta_1} \) be the \( \beta_1 \) smallest locations in \( \text{dom}(h') \setminus \{s'(x_1), \ldots, s'(x_q)\} \). Then \( \{l_1, \ldots, l_{\beta_1}\} \subseteq \text{dom}(h'_1) \) by definition. This concludes the construction of \( h'_1 \).

Case 4: \( C_\forall(s, h) > \alpha \), \( C_\forall(s, h_1) \geq \alpha_1 \) and \( C_\forall(s, h_2) < \alpha_2 \).

This is symmetrical to Case 3 and the only case for which we define explicitly the heap \( h'_2 \) (and therefore \( h'_1 \) by complementation). Let \( \beta_2 = C_\forall(s, h_2) \). Since \( \min(\alpha, C_\forall(s, h)) = \min(\alpha, C_\forall(s', h')) = \alpha \), \( \beta_2 \leq \alpha \) and \( \beta_2 \leq \min(\alpha, C_\forall(s', h')) \), let \( l_1 < \cdots < l_{\beta_2} \) be the \( \beta_2 \) smallest locations in \( \text{dom}(h') \setminus \{s'(x_1), \ldots, s'(x_q)\} \). Then \( \{l_1, \ldots, l_{\beta_2}\} \subseteq \text{dom}(h'_2) \) by definition. This concludes the construction of \( h'_2 \).

Note that after the last three cases, the case \( C_\forall(s, h_1) < \alpha_1 \), \( C_\forall(s, h_2) < \alpha_2 \) is excluded because \( \alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \) and \( C_\forall(s, h) > \alpha \).

It remains to show that \((s, h_1) \approx_{\alpha_1}^q (s', h'_1) \) and \((s, h_2) \approx_{\alpha_2}^q (s', h'_2) \). For the satisfaction of the test formulae of the form \( x_i = x_j \), \textit{alloc}(x_i) \) and \( x_i \leftrightarrow x_j \), the proof is by an easy verification. It remains to check the satisfiability status of the formulae \( \text{size}_\forall \geq \beta \) with \( \beta \in [0, \alpha] \). This amounts to check that \( \min(\alpha_1, C_\forall(s, h_1)) = \min(\alpha_1, C_\forall(s', h'_1)) \) and \( \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s, h_2)) = \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s', h'_2)) \). The Case 1 is by an easy verification since \( C_\forall(s, h_1) = C_\forall(s', h'_1) \) and \( C_\forall(s, h_2) = C_\forall(s', h'_2) \) whereas the Case 2 is quite immediate because \( \min(\alpha_1, C_\forall(s, h_1)) = \min(\alpha_1, C_\forall(s', h'_1)) = \alpha_1 \) by construction, and \( C_\forall(s', h') - \alpha_1 > \alpha_2 \) and therefore \( \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s', h'_2)) = \alpha_2 \) i.e. \( \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s', h'_2)) \) is equal to \( \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s, h_2)) \).

Below we analyse the Case 3 (we omit the Case 4 since its treatment is symmetrical). \( C_\forall(s, h_1) = C_\forall(s', h'_1) < \alpha_1 \) and therefore \( C_\forall(s', h') - C_\forall(s', h'_1) > \alpha_2 \). Consequently, \( C_\forall(s', h'_2) > \alpha_2 \), whence \( \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s', h'_2)) = \min(\alpha_2, C_\forall(s, h_2)) = \alpha_2 \).

QED

Given a memory state \((s, h)\), we write \( \text{maxval}(s, h) \) to denote the maximal value \( \max(\text{ran}(s) \cup \text{dom}(h)) \cup \text{ran}(h)) \).

Lemma 5.3.4. Let \( \alpha \in \mathbb{N} \) and \((s, h), (s', h')\) be memory states such that \((s, h) \approx_{\alpha}^q (s', h')\). For any heap \( h_1 \) disjoint from \( h \), there is a heap \( h'_1 \) disjoint from \( h' \) such that the conditions below hold:

(I) \((s, h_1) \approx_{\alpha_1}^q (s', h'_1)\).

(II) \((s, h \uplus h_1) \approx_{\alpha_2}^q (s', h' \uplus h'_1)\).

(III) \( \text{maxval}(s', h'_1) \leq \text{maxval}(s', h') + \alpha \).

152
\section*{CHAPTER 5. DECISION PROCEDURES}

If we give up the condition \((III)\) the condition \((I)\) can be strengthened by: 
\((s, b_1) \approx^\beta_\alpha (s', b'_1)\) for all \(\beta \geq 0\) (i.e. \(\text{dom}(b_1)\) and \(\text{dom}(b'_1)\) have the same cardinality).

\textbf{Proof.} Let \(\alpha, (s, b), (s', b')\) and \(b_1\) be defined as in the statement. Let us explain how to build the heap \(b'_1\) and then we show that it satisfies the right properties. The heap \(b'_1\) is built incrementally and therefore its initial value is naturally the empty heap.

- For every \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(b_1)\) with \(i \in [1, q]\), if \(b_1(s(x_i)) = s(x_j)\) for some \(j \in [1, q]\), then \(b'_1(s'(x_i)) \overset{\text{def}}{=} s'(x_j)\), otherwise \(b'_1(s'(x_i)) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \max\{s'(x_j) \mid j \in [1, q]\} + 1\).

Since \((s, b) \approx^\beta_\alpha (s', b')\) and, \(b\) and \(b_1\) are disjoint, this implies that the current value of \(b'_1\) after the addition of all the new memory cells (according to the above definition) is disjoint from \(b'\). Moreover, \((s, b_1)\) and \((s', b'_1)\) agree on test formulae of the form \(x_i = x_j, x_i \leftarrow x_j\) and \(\text{alloc}(x_i)\).

- Let \(\beta_1 = \min(\alpha, C_\beta(s, b_1))\). For every \(i \in [1, \beta_1]\), we extend \(b'_1\) so that

\[
\begin{align*}
b'_1(\max\{s'(x_j) \mid j \in [1, q]\} + i) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \max\{s'(x_j) \mid j \in [1, q]\} + i.
\end{align*}
\]

Consequently, \(\min(\alpha, C_\beta(s, b_1)) = \min(\alpha, C_\beta(s', b'_1))\) and therefore this implies that \((s, b_1)\) and \((s', b'_1)\) agree on the test formulae of the form \(\text{size}_{\beta} \geq \beta\) with \(\beta \in [0, \alpha]\).

From the construction of \(b'_1\), we can conclude that \((s, b_1) \approx^\beta_\alpha (s', b'_1)\) and

\[
\maxval(s', b'_1) \leq \maxval(s', b') + \alpha.
\]

It remains to show that \((s, b \cup b_1) \approx^\beta_\alpha (s', b' \cup b'_1)\). The satisfaction of the test formulae \(x_i = x_j\) is inherited from \((s, b) \approx^\beta_\alpha (s', b')\) (because the stores are unchanged) whereas the satisfaction of the test formulae \(x_i \leftarrow x_j\) and \(\text{alloc}(x_i)\) requires simple arguments by distinguishing four cases:

1. \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(b)\),
2. \(s(x_i) \notin \text{dom}(b \cup b_1)\),
3. \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(b_1)\) and \(b_1(s(x_i)) \notin \{s(x_j) \mid j \in [1, q]\}\) and finally
4. \(s(x_i) \in \text{dom}(b_1)\) and \(b_1(s(x_i)) \in \{s(x_j) \mid j \in [1, q]\}\).
5.3. DIRECT APPROACH: AN EXAMPLE

Details are omitted. In order to check that \((s, h \uplus b_1)\) and \((s', h' \uplus b'_1)\) agree on test formulae of the form \(\text{size}_\mathcal{Q} \geq \beta\) with \(\beta \in [0, \alpha]\), it is sufficient to observe that \(\min(\alpha, C_\mathcal{Q}(s, h)) = \min(\alpha, C_\mathcal{Q}(s', h'))\) and \(\min(\alpha, C_\mathcal{Q}(s, h_1)) = \min(\alpha, C_\mathcal{Q}(s', h'_1))\) imply

\[
\min(\alpha, C_\mathcal{Q}(s, h \uplus b_1)) = \min(\alpha, C_\mathcal{Q}(s', h' \uplus b'_1))
\]

since \(C_\mathcal{Q}(s, h \uplus b_1) = C_\mathcal{Q}(s, h) + C_\mathcal{Q}(s, b_1)\) and \(C_\mathcal{Q}(s', h' \uplus b'_1) = C_\mathcal{Q}(s', h') + C_\mathcal{Q}(s', b'_1)\). \(\Box\)

For each formula \(\varphi\), we define its **memory size** \(\text{msize}(\varphi)\) following the clauses below \[\text{Yan01}\]. This is just a refinement of the size of \(\varphi\) when formulae are represented by their syntactic trees.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{msize}(x_i \leftarrow x_i') & \overset{\text{def}}{=} 1 \\
\text{msize}(x_i = x_i') & \overset{\text{def}}{=} 0 \\
\text{msize}(\text{emp}) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} 1 \\
\text{msize}(\neg \psi) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{msize}(\psi) \\
\text{msize}(\psi_1 \land \psi_2) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \max(\text{msize}(\psi_1), \text{msize}(\psi_2)) \\
\text{msize}(\psi_1 \lor \psi_2) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \text{msize}(\psi_1) + \text{msize}(\psi_2) \\
\text{msize}(\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \max(\text{msize}(\psi_1), \text{msize}(\psi_2)).
\end{align*}
\]

For instance \(\text{msize}(\text{size} = 3) = 4\) when \(\text{size} = 3\) is defined in 1SL0 by the formula below:

\[
((\neg \text{emp}) \land (\neg \text{emp}) \land (\neg \text{emp})) \land \neg((\neg \text{emp}) \land (\neg \text{emp}) \land (\neg \text{emp}) \land (\neg \text{emp})).
\]

The memory size is bounded above by the size when formulae are encoded as trees.

**Lemma 5.3.5.** For every \(\varphi\) in 1SL0, \(\text{msize}(\varphi)\) is smaller that the size of \(\varphi\), assuming that formulae are encoded as trees.

**Theorem 5.3.6.** Let \(\varphi\) be a formula in 1SL0 built over the program variables \(x_1, \ldots, x_q\). For any \(\alpha \in \mathbb{N}\) such that \(\text{msize}(\varphi) \leq \alpha\), and for all memory states \((s, h)\), \((s', h')\) such that \((s, h) \approx_\alpha (s', h')\), we have \((s, h) \vdash \varphi\) iff \((s', h') \vdash \varphi\).
CHAPTER 5. DECISION PROCEDURES

Proof. Suppose that \((s, h) \approx^q (s', h')\) and \(\varphi\) be a formula with \(\text{msize}(\varphi) \leq \alpha\). By structural induction, we show that \((s, h) \models \varphi\) if and only if \((s', h') \models \varphi\). It is sufficient to establish one direction of the equivalence thanks to the symmetry.

The base case with the atomic formulae of the form \(x_i \leftrightarrow x_j\), \(x_i = x_j\) or \(\text{emp}\) is by an easy verification due to the very definition of the test formulae. Indeed, \(x_i \leftrightarrow x_j\) and \(x_i = x_j\) are already test formulae in \(\text{Test}'(q, \alpha)\) whereas \(\text{emp}\) is logically equivalent to

\[
(\bigwedge_{i \in [1, q]} \neg \text{alloc}(x_i)) \land \neg (\text{size}_T \geq 1).
\]

In the induction step, the cases with Boolean connectives are even more straightforward to prove.

Case 1: \(\psi = \psi_1 \star \psi_2\).

Suppose that \((s, h) \models \psi_1 \star \psi_2\) and \(\text{msize}(\psi_1 \star \psi_2) \leq \alpha\). There are heaps \(h_1\) and \(h_2\) such that \(h = h_1 \uplus h_2\), \((s, h_1) \models \psi_1\) and \((s, h_2) \models \psi_2\). As \(\alpha \geq \text{msize}(\psi_1 \star \psi_2) = \text{msize}(\psi_1) + \text{msize}(\psi_2)\), there exist \(\alpha_1\) and \(\alpha_2\) such that \(\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2\), \(\alpha_1 \geq \text{msize}(\psi_1)\) and \(\alpha_2 \geq \text{msize}(\psi_2)\). By Lemma 5.3.3, there exist heaps \(h_1'\) and \(h_2'\) such that \(h' = h_1' \uplus h_2'\), \((s, h_1') \approx_{\alpha_1}^q (s', h_1')\) and \((s, h_2') \approx_{\alpha_2}^q (s', h_2')\). By the induction hypothesis, we get \((s', h_1') \models \psi_1\) and \((s', h_2') \models \psi_2\). Consequently, we obtain \((s', h') \models \psi_1 \star \psi_2\).

Case 2: \(\psi = \psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2\).

Suppose that \((s, h) \models \psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2\) and \(\text{msize}(\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2) \leq \alpha\). Since \(\text{msize}(\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2) = \text{msize}(\psi_2)\), we also get that \(\text{msize}(\psi_1), \text{msize}(\psi_2) \leq \alpha\).

Let us prove that \((s', h') \models \psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2\). Let \(h_1'\) be a heap disjoint from \(h'\) such that \((s', h_1') \models \psi_1\). By Lemma 5.3.4, there is a heap \(h_1\) disjoint from \(h\) such that \((s, h_1) \approx_{\alpha}^q (s', h_1')\) and \((s, h_1 \uplus h_1) \approx_{\alpha}^q (s', h_1 \uplus h_1')\). By the induction hypothesis, we conclude that \((s, h_1) \models \psi_1\). Since \((s, h_1) \models \psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2\), this implies that \((s, h_1 \uplus h_1) \models \psi_2\). By the induction hypothesis, we conclude that \((s', h_1 \uplus h_1') \models \psi_2\). Since \(h_1'\) is an arbitrary disjoint heap from \(h'\), we obtain \((s', h') \models \psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2\). QED

Theorem 5.3.7. Let \(\varphi\) be a formula in \(1SL_0\) built over the variables in \(x_1, \ldots, x_q\). The formula \(\varphi\) is logically equivalent to a Boolean combination of test formulae from \(\text{Test}(q, q + \text{msize}(\varphi))\).

Theorem 5.3.7 can be viewed as a means to eliminate separating connectives \(\star\) and \(\rightarrow\) and this is analogous to quantifier elimination in Presburger arithmetic \([\text{Pre}29]\) for which periodicity constraints need to be introduced in order to eliminate the quantifiers (see e.g. \([\text{Coo}72]\)). Similarly, the atomic formulae
5.3. **DIRECT APPROACH: AN EXAMPLE**

size \( \geq k \) and alloc\((x_i)\) would require the use of the separating connectives to be properly defined in 1SL0 but in the Boolean combinations, these formulae are understood as primitive.

**Proof.** Let \( \alpha = \text{msize}(\varphi) \). Given a memory state \((s, h)\), we write LIT\((s, h)\) to denote the following set of literals:

\[
\{ \chi \in \text{Test}'(q, \alpha) \mid (s, h) \models \chi \} \cup \{ \neg \chi \mid (s, h) \not\models \chi \text{ with } \chi \in \text{Test}'(q, \alpha) \}.
\]

Since Test\((q, \alpha)\) is a finite set, LIT\((s, h)\) is finite too and let us consider the well-defined formula \( \bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi \). We have the following equivalence:

\[
(s', h') \models \bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi \iff (s, h) \approx (s', h').
\]

The expression below

\[
\psi' \overset{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{(s, h) \models \varphi} \left( \bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi \right)
\]

is equivalent to a Boolean combination \( \varphi' \) of formulae from Test\((q, \alpha)\) because LIT\((s, h)\) ranges over the finite set of elements from Test\((q, \alpha)\) (just select a finite amount of disjuncts). By Theorem 5.3.6, the formula \( \varphi \) is logically equivalent to \( \varphi' \), which concludes the proof since any formula of the form size\(q \geq \beta \) with \( \beta \leq \alpha \) is logically equivalent to a Boolean combination of test formulae from Test\((q, q + \alpha)\).

Indeed, suppose that \((s, h) \models \varphi\). Obviously, this implies that \((s, h) \models \bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi \) and therefore \((s, h) \models \varphi'\). Conversely, suppose that \((s, h) \models \varphi'\). This means that there is a memory state \((s', h')\) such that \((s', h') \models \varphi\) and \((s, h) \models \bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi\). Since \((s, h) \approx (s', h')\), msize\((\varphi) \leq \alpha \) and \((s', h') \models \varphi\), by Theorem 5.3.6 we get \((s, h) \models \varphi\).

Now, it is possible to establish the small model property.

**Corollary 5.3.8.** Let \( \varphi \) be a satisfiable 1SL0 formula built over \( x_1, \ldots, x_q \). There is a memory state \((s, h)\) such that \((s, h) \models \varphi\) and \( \text{maxval}(s, h) \leq q + \text{msize}(\varphi) \).

The proof is left as Exercise 5.10.
5.3.2 A model-checking decision procedure

In order to check the satisfiability status of $\varphi$, only the truth value of formulae in Test$'(q, msize(\varphi))$ matters. That is why, instead of operating on memory states to check satisfiability, it is sufficient to operate on its abstractions (with respect to the basic properties induced by Test$'(q, msize(\varphi))$), whence the introduction of symbolic memory states below. A symbolic memory state $sms$ over $(q, \alpha)$ is a finite structure $(P, A, H, n)$ such that:

1. $P$ is a partition of $\{x_1, \ldots, x_q\}$ (encoding equalities) and $A \subseteq P$ (encoding the subset in the domain).

2. $H$ is a functional relation on $P$ such that $\text{dom}(H) = A$.

3. $n \in [0, \alpha]$. This corresponds to the number of locations in the heap domain that are not equal to the interpretation of some program variables in $\{x_1, \ldots, x_q\}$. For values strictly greater than $\alpha$, a truncation is considered.

Given $q \geq 1$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$, the number of symbolic memory states over $(q, \alpha)$ is “only” exponential in $q + \alpha$. Given a memory state $(s, h)$, we define its abstraction $\text{Symb}[s, h]$ over $(q, \alpha)$ as the symbolic memory state $(P, A, H, n)$ such that

- $n = \min(\alpha, \text{card}(\text{dom}(h) \setminus \{s(x_i) \mid i \in [1, q]\}))$.
- $P$ is a partition of $\{x_1, \ldots, x_q\}$ so that for all $x, x'$, we have $s(x) = s(x')$ iff $x$ and $x'$ belong to the same set in $P$.
- $A = \{X \in P \mid \text{there is } x \in X, \; s(x) \in \text{dom}(h)\}$.
- $X H X'$ iff there are $x \in X$ and $x' \in X'$ such that $h(s(x)) = s(x')$.

Note that given a symbolic memory state $sms$ over $(q, \alpha)$, there exists always a memory state $(s, h)$ such that $\text{Symb}[s, h]$ is equal to $sms$. Not only every symbolic memory state has always a concretisation but also symbolic memory states are the right way to abstract memory states when the language 1SL0 is involved, which can be formally stated as follows: $(s, h) \approx^h_{\alpha} (s', h')$ iff $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{Symb}[s', h']$.

**Definition 5.3.9.** Given symbolic memory states $sms$, $sms_1$ and $sms_2$, we write $*_{\alpha}(sms, sms_1, sms_2)$ whenever there exist a store $s$ and disjoint heaps $h_1$ and $h_2$ such that $\text{Symb}[s, h_1 \uplus h_2] = sms$, $\text{Symb}[s, h_1] = sms_1$ and $\text{Symb}[s, h_2] = sms_2$. \( \nabla \)
5.3. **DIRECT APPROACH: AN EXAMPLE**

1. **if** $\psi$ **is atomic** **then** return $\text{AMC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$;

2. **if** $\psi = \lnot \psi_1$ **then** return $\text{not MC}(\text{sms}, \psi_1)$;

3. **if** $\psi = \psi_1 \land \psi_2$ **then** return $(\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \psi_1) \land \text{MC}(\text{sms}, \psi_2))$;

4. **if** $\psi = \psi_1 \ast \psi_2$ **then** return $\top$ iff there are $\text{sms}_1$ and $\text{sms}_2$ such that $*_{s}(\text{sms}, \text{sms}_1, \text{sms}_2)$ and $\text{MC}(\text{sms}_1, \psi_1) = \text{MC}(\text{sms}_2, \psi_2) = \top$;

5. **if** $\psi = \psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$ **then** return $\bot$ iff for some $\text{sms}'$ and $\text{sms}''$ such that $*_{s}(\text{sms}'', \text{sms}', \text{sms})$, $\text{MC}(\text{sms}', \psi_1) = \top$ and $\text{MC}(\text{sms}'', \psi_2) = \bot$;

---

Figure 5.1: Function $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$

Given $q \geq 1$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$, the ternary relation $*_{s}$ can be decided in polynomial time in $q + \log(\alpha)$ for all the symbolic memory states built over $(q, \alpha)$. Indeed, assuming that $\text{sms} = (P, A, H, \pi)$ and $\text{sms}_i = (P_i, A_i, H_i, \pi_i)$, the relation $*_{s}(\text{sms}, \text{sms}_1, \text{sms}_2)$ holds exactly when the conditions below are satisfied:

1. $P = P_1 = P_2$,

2. $A = A_1 \cup A_2$ and $A_1 \cap A_2 = \emptyset$,

3. $H = H_1 \cup H_2$,

4. $\pi = \max(\alpha, \pi_1 + \pi_2)$.

A formal proof is left as Exercise 5.12. Note that there is no need to specify that $H_1 \cap H_2 = \emptyset$ since this is a consequence of $A_1 \cap A_2 = \emptyset$, $\text{dom}(H_1) \subseteq A_1$ and $\text{dom}(H_2) \subseteq A_2$.

Figure 5.1 presents a procedure $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$ returning a Boolean value in $\{\bot, \top\}$ and taking as arguments, a symbolic memory state over $(q, \alpha)$ and a formula $\psi$ whose size is bounded above by $\alpha$. All the quantifications over symbolic memory states are done over $(q, \alpha)$. A case analysis is provided depending on the outermost connective of the input formula. Its structure is standard and mimicks faithfully the semantics for 1SL0 except that we deal with symbolic memory states. The auxiliary function $\text{AMC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$ also returns a Boolean value in $\{\bot, \top\}$, makes no recursive calls and is dedicated to atomic formulae (see Figure 5.2). The design of $\text{MC}$ is similar to nondeterministic polynomial-space procedures, see e.g. [Lad77, Spa93, COY01, Dem03].
1. if $\psi$ is $\text{emp}$ then return $\top$ iff $A = \emptyset$ and $n = 0$;

2. if $\psi$ is $x_i = x_j$ then return $\top$ iff $x_i, x_j \in X$, for some $X \in P$;

3. if $\psi$ is $x_i \leftrightarrow x_j$ then return $\top$ iff $(X, X') \in H$ where $x_i \in X \in P$ and $x_j \in X' \in P$;

Figure 5.2: Function $\text{AMC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$

Lemma 5.3.10. Let $q \geq 1$, $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}$, $\text{sms}$ be a symbolic memory state over $(q, \alpha)$ and $\varphi$ be in 1SL0 built over $x_1, \ldots, x_q$ such that $\text{msize}(\varphi) \leq \alpha$. We have $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi)$ returns $\top$ iff there exists $(s, h)$ such that $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{sms}$ and $(s, h) \models \varphi$.

Proof. Let us show the equivalence by structural induction. We omit below the base case with atomic formulae and the case with negated subformulae.

First, let us make a basic observation. Indeed, given a symbolic memory state $\text{sms}$, the statements below are equivalent:

- there exists $(s, h)$ such that $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{sms}$ and $(s, h) \models \varphi$,

- for all memory states $(s, h)$ such that $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{sms}$, we have $(s, h) \models \varphi$.

Indeed, $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{Symb}[s', h']$ implies $(s, h) \approx_{q, \text{msize}(\varphi)} (s', h')$ and therefore we conclude $(s, h) \approx_{\text{msize}(\varphi)} (s', h')$ by Lemma 5.3.2 since $\text{msize}(\varphi) \leq \text{msize}(\varphi) \leq \alpha$. By Theorem 5.3.6, we get $(s, h) \models \varphi$ iff $(s', h') \models \varphi$.

Case 1: $\varphi = \varphi_1 \land \varphi_2$.

Suppose that $(s, h) \models \varphi$ and $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{sms}$. So, $(s, h) \models \varphi_1$ and $(s, h) \models \varphi_2$, and by the induction hypothesis, both $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi_1)$ and $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi_2)$ return $\top$ ($\text{msize}(\varphi_1), \text{msize}(\varphi_2) \leq \alpha$ too). Hence, $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi)$ returns $\top$.

Conversely, suppose that $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi)$ returns $\top$. By definition of MC, we have $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi_1)$ and $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi_2)$. For all memory states $(s', h')$ such that $\text{Symb}[s', h'] = \text{sms}$, we have $(s', h') \models \varphi_1$ and $(s', h') \models \varphi_2$. We have seen that every symbolic memory state admits a concretisation. Consequently, there is a memory state $(s, h)$ such that $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{sms}$. By the induction hypothesis, $(s, h) \models \varphi_1$ and $(s, h) \models \varphi_2$ and therefore $(s, h) \models \varphi$.

Case 2: $\varphi = \varphi_1 \land \varphi_2$.

Suppose that $(s, h) \models \varphi$ and $\text{Symb}[s, h] = \text{sms}$. So, there are subheaps $h_1$ and $h_2$ such that $h = h_1 \uplus h_2$, $(s, h_1) \models \varphi_1$ and $(s, h_2) \models \varphi_2$. By the induction hypothesis,
5.3. DIRECT APPROACH: AN EXAMPLE

MC(Symb[s, h₁], ϕ₁) and MC(Symb[s, h₂], ϕ₂) return T. By definition of *ₘ, we have

\[ *ₘ(Symb[s, h], Symb[s, h₁], Symb[s, h₂]) \]

and therefore there are sms₁ and sms₂ such that *ₘ(sms, sms₁, sms₂) and MC(sms₁, ϕ₁) = MC(sms₂, ϕ₂) = T, whence MC(sms, ϕ) returns T.

Conversely we assume sms₁, sms₂ such that

\[ *ₘ(sms, sms₁, sms₂) \text{ and } MC(sms₁, ϕ₁) = MC(sms₂, ϕ₂) = T. \]

By definition of *ₘ, there exist a store s and disjoint heaps h₁ and h₂ such that Symb[s, h₁ ∪ h₂] = sms, Symb[s, h₁] = sms₁, Symb[s, h₂] = sms₂. By the induction hypothesis, we get that (s, h₁) \models ϕ₁ and (s, h₂) \models ϕ₂. Consequently, (s, h) \models ϕ.

Case 3: ϕ = ϕ₁ ∨ ϕ₂. Suppose that (s, h) \not\models ϕ and Symb[s, h] = sms. There is a heap h’ disjoint from h such that (s, h’) \models ϕ₁ and (s, h ∪ h’) \not\models ϕ₂. By definition of *ₘ, we have *ₘ(Symb[s, h ∪ h’], Symb[s, h], Symb[s, h’]). By the induction hypothesis, we have MC(Symb[s, h’], ϕ₁) returns T and MC(Symb[s, h ∪ h’], ϕ₂) returns ⊥. So, for some sms’ and sms” such that *ₘ(sms”, sms’, sms), we get MC(sms’, ϕ₁) = T and MC(sms”, ϕ₂) = ⊥, whence MC(sms, ϕ) returns ⊥.

Conversely, suppose that MC(sms, ϕ) returns ⊥. For some sms’ and sms” such that *ₘ(sms”, sms’, sms) and MC(sms’, ϕ₁) = T and MC(sms”, ϕ₂) = ⊥. By definition of *ₘ, there exist a store s and disjoint heaps h₁ and h₂ such that Symb[s, h₁ ∪ h₂] = sms”, Symb[s, h₁] = sms, Symb[s, h₂] = sms’. By the induction hypothesis and by using that preliminary equivalence, we have (s, h₁ ∪ h₂) \not\models ϕ₂ and (s, h₂) \models ϕ₁ whence (s, h) \not\models ϕ.

For the correction of the proof of the last case, we crucially need to use that msize(ϕ₁ ∨ ϕ₂) ≤ α implies that msize(ϕ₂) ≤ α but also msize(ϕ₁) ≤ α –this last inequality would not necessarily hold with the size function msize(). QED

Consequently, we get the following complexity characterisation

**Theorem 5.3.11.** [COY01] Model-checking and satisfiability problems for 1SL0 are in PSPACE.

**Proof.** PSPACE upper bound is a consequence of Lemma 5.3.10 by recalling that ϕ is satisfiable iff there is a memory state (s, h) such that (s, h) \models ϕ iff there is a symbolic memory state sms over (q, msize(ϕ)) such that MC(sms, ϕ) = T. It is sufficient to guess sms and then check whether MC(sms, ϕ) returns T. All of this can be done in non-deterministic polynomial space and by Savitch’s Theorem [Sav70], we get the PSPACE upper bound.
We observe that \( \text{MC}(\text{sms}, \phi) \) runs in space \( O(d(q + \log(\alpha))) \) where \( d \) is the depth of syntactic tree for \( \phi \) since the quantifications are over symbolic memory states over \((q, \alpha)\), there is an exponential amount in \( q + \alpha \) and each symbolic memory state can be encoded with space in \( O(q + \log(\alpha)) \). Moreover, the recursion depth of MC is linear in \( d \), which is itself linear in the size of \( \phi \). Hence, all the symbolic memory states considered in the algorithm are of polynomial size in the size of \( \phi \).

For the model-checking problem, it is sufficient to call MC with the abstraction of the memory state. Indeed, \((s, h) \models \phi \) iff \( \text{MC}(\text{Symb}[s, h], \phi) \) returns true with \( \alpha = \text{msize}(\phi) \) (by Lemma 5.3.10). Now, Symb\([s, h]\) and \( \alpha \) can be constructed in polynomial space and MC runs in polynomial space too. QED

PSpace-hardness has been presented in Section 2.1.2. An alternative way to obtain the PSpace upper bound has been proposed in \cite{Hag04, CGH05} by a logarithmic-space reduction to the first-order theory of equality shown in PSpace in \cite{Sto77} (see also Section 5.4).

**Corollary 5.3.12.** Given a formula \( \phi \) in 1SL0, computing a Boolean combination of atomic formulae from \( \text{Test}(q, q + \text{msize}(\phi)) \) logically equivalent to \( \phi \) can be done in polynomial space.

**Proof.** This is actually a quite direct consequence of the proof of Theorem 5.3.7. Let \( \phi \) be a 1SL0 formula with \( \alpha = \text{msize}(\phi) \). By the proof of Theorem 5.3.7 and Corollary 5.3.8 \( \phi \) is logically equivalent to the formula below

\[
\bigvee \{ (\bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi) \mid \text{MC}(\text{Symb}[s, h], \phi) = \top \text{ and } \maxval(s, h) \leq q + \alpha \}.
\]

Note that Symb\([s, h]\) is computed with \( q \) and \( \text{msize}(\phi) \).

The non-isomorphic copies of memory states \((s, h)\) such that \( \maxval(s, h) \leq q + \alpha \) can be enumerated in polynomial space. Moreover, the model-checking problem for 1SL0 is in PSpace; so the above formula can be built in polynomial space (but its size may be exponential in the size of \( \phi \)) by taking advantage of the fact that \( \bigwedge_{\psi \in \text{LIT}(s, h)} \psi \) can be constructed in polynomial space. QED

As by-product, we can also establish the existence of a family of PTime fragments of 1SL0.

**Corollary 5.3.13.** Let \( q \geq 1 \). The satisfiability problem for 1SL0 restricted to formulae with at most \( q \) program variables can be solved in polynomial time.
5.4. TRANSLATION INTO QBF

**Proof.** Let $\varphi$ be a formula in 1SL0 with at most $q$ program variables. When $q$ is fixed, the number of symbolic memory states over $(q, \text{msize}(\varphi))$ is polynomial in the size of $\varphi$. To check the satisfiability status of the formula $\varphi$, for each symbolic memory state $\text{sms}$, we check whether $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \varphi)$ returns $\top$. To do so, we use standard principles from dynamic programming and we maintain a table $A[\text{sms}, \psi]$ taking values in $\{\text{unknown}, \top, \bot\}$ to memorize the value returned by $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$ for each subformula of $\psi$ and for each symbolic memory state $\text{sms}$ over $(q, \text{msize}(\varphi))$. All the initial values are equal to $\text{unknown}$. We launch a new call to $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \psi)$ only when $A[\text{sms}, \psi] = \text{unknown}$. Moreover, before returning a value with $\text{MC}$, we update the table $A$ accordingly. Since the table has a polynomial number of entries in the size of $\varphi$, we have that $\varphi$ is satisfiable iff there is a symbolic memory state such that $A[\text{sms}, \varphi] = \top$, which can be verified in polynomial time in the size of $\varphi$.

QED

All the above results can be extended to $k > 1$ (see Exercise 5.14) by adequately adapting the previous developments.

## 5.4 Translation into QBF

Symbolic memory states abstract memory states and their encoding requires a polynomial amount of bits. In this section, we show how symbolic memory states can be encoded by propositional variables and then how the model-checking algorithm can be expressed as a QBF formula where the quantification over symbolic memory states in MC (from Section 5.3) can be straightforwardly encoded by quantification in QBF. This allows us to reduce easily 1SL0 satisfiability to QBF satisfiability, and then to recall how QBF can be translated into a PSPACE fragment of first-order logic [Sto77]. In that way, instead of using an SMT solver as done in Section 5.2 or an ad-hoc algorithm MC based on symbolic memory states, it becomes possible to use either a QBF solver (see e.g. [LB10, HSB14]) or a theorem prover for first-order logic (see e.g. [WDF09, KV13]) to solve the satisfiability/validity problem for 1SL0, as advocated in [Hag04, CGH05]. Nevertheless, it is fair to observe that the translation into QBF presented below takes advantage of the abstraction made in Section 5.3. It is worth mentioning that an alternative approach has been developed in [BF12] in which concepts from separation logic are directly imported into first-order logic in order to perform program verification.

In order to encode symbolic memory states over $(q, \alpha)$ of the form $(P, A, H, n)$, we consider the following atomic propositions.
• $\text{EQ}(i, j)$ ($i, j \in [1, q]$) for encoding whether the program variables $x_i$ and $x_j$ belong to the same set $X \in P$.

• $A(i)$ ($i \in [1, q]$) for encoding whether there is $P \in A$ such that $x_i \in P$.

• $H(i, j)$ ($i, j \in [1, q]$) for encoding whether there is a pair $(X, X')$ such that $x_i \in X$, $x_j \in X'$ and $(X, X')$ belongs to $H$.

• $N(\beta)$ ($\beta \in [0, \alpha]$) for encoding whether $n = \beta$. (Of course, a binary encoding is possible but not needed to illustrate the main ideas.)

We write $X$ to denote the above set of atomic propositions (that is parameterised by $q$ and $\alpha$). So, each symbolic memory state comes with its set of atomic propositions. We write $X'$ to denote the set of atomic propositions defined as $X$ except that the atomic propositions are primed. The set $X''$ is defined similarly as well as other variants that decorate differently the atomic propositions.

Given a propositional valuation $v$ built over the sets $X^1, \ldots, X^n$, we write $\text{Symb}[v]$ to denote the unique $n$-tuple of symbolic memory states, if it is defined, such that the $i$th element of the tuple is equal to the symbolic memory state corresponding to the interpretation of the atomic propositions from $X^i$. Given a symbolic memory state $(P, A, H, \eta)$, one can easily design a propositional valuation that encodes it by the truth value of the atomic propositions in $X$. Similarly, existence of a symbolic memory state corresponding to a propositional valuation over $X$ can be specified by a propositional formula of polynomial size.

Lemma 5.4.1. Let $X$ be a set of atomic propositions possibly encoding a symbolic memory state. There is a propositional formula $\text{SMS}(X)$ built over $X$ such that for all propositional valuations $v$, we have $v \models \text{SMS}(X)$ iff there is a symbolic memory state $\text{sms}$ such that $\text{Symb}[v] = \text{sms}$.

The proof is left as Exercise 5.16. $\text{SMS}(X)$ is a conjunction of formulae expressing simple properties. By way of example, there is a conjunct that states that exactly one atomic proposition among $N(0), \ldots, N(\alpha)$ holds true.

Lemma 5.4.2. Let $X$, $X'$ and $X''$ be three sets of atomic propositions possibly encoding symbolic memory states. There is a propositional formula $\ast_p(X, X', X'')$ such that for all propositional valuations $v$, we have $v \models \ast_p(X, X', X'')$ iff there are symbolic memory states $\text{sms}$, $\text{sms}'$ and $\text{sms}''$ such that $\ast_s(\text{sms}, \text{sms}', \text{sms}'')$ and $\text{Symb}[v] = (\text{sms}, \text{sms}', \text{sms}'')$. 

163
5.4. TRANSLATION INTO QBF

**Proof.** (sketch) The formula \(*_p(X, X', X'')\) is defined as the conjunction of the propositional formulae below:

1. \(X, X'\) and \(X''\) encode a symbolic memory state:
   
   \[ SMS(X) \land SMS(X') \land SMS(X''). \]

2. Encoding of ‘\(P = P_1 = P_2\)’:
   
   \[ \bigwedge_{i,j \in [1,q]} \left( EQ(i,j) \iff EQ'(i,j) \land EQ''(i,j) \right). \]

3. Encoding of ‘\(A = A_1 \cup A_2 \text{ and } A_1 \cap A_2 = \emptyset\)’:
   
   \[ \bigwedge_{i \in [1,q]} \left( A(i) \iff (A'(i) \lor A''(i)) \land \neg (A'(i) \land A''(i)) \right). \]

4. Encoding of ‘\(H = H_1 \cup H_2\)’:
   
   \[ \bigwedge_{i,j \in [1,q]} \left( H(i,j) \iff (H'(i,j) \lor H''(i,j)) \land \neg (H'(i,j) \land H''(i,j)) \right). \]

5. Encoding of ‘\(n = \text{max}(\alpha, n_1 + n_2)\)’:
   
   \[ \bigwedge_{\beta, \beta' \in [0,\alpha]} \left( N'(\beta) \land N''(\beta') \Rightarrow N(\text{min}(\alpha, \beta + \beta')). \right) \]

The translation below is a simplification of the translation from Section 1.3.3 by taking into account the structure of the symbolic memory states involved in the algorithm MC from Section 5.3. The map \(tr\) is homomorphic for Boolean connectives (\(X, X'\) and \(X''\) are sets of atomic propositions possibly encoding symbolic memory states).

\[
\begin{align*}
tr(\text{emp}, X) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} N(0) \land \neg A(1) \land \cdots \land \neg A(q) \\
tr(x_i \leftarrow x_{i'}, X) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} H(i,j) \\
tr(x_i = x_{i'}, X) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} EQ(i,j) \\
tr(\psi_1 \ast \psi_2, X) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists X', X'' \ast_p (X, X', X'') \land tr(\psi_1, X') \land tr(\psi_2, X'') \\
tr(\psi_1 \ast \psi_2, X) & \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall X', (\exists X' \ast_p (X'', X, X')) \Rightarrow (\exists X' \ast_p (X'', X, X') \land (tr(\psi_1, X') \Rightarrow tr(\psi_2, X })).
\end{align*}
\]
All the quantifications involved in the translation introduce new atomic propositions and $\exists \{p_1, \ldots, p_m\} \psi$ is understood as a shortcut for $\exists p_1, \ldots, \exists p_m \psi$. Moreover, the atomic propositions $N(0), A(1), \ldots, A(q), H(i,j)$ and $EQ(i,j)$ mentioned above are those from the set $X$, which is one argument of the translation.

**Lemma 5.4.3.** Let $\phi$ be a formula built over the program variables $x_1, \ldots, x_q$ and $\alpha = \text{msize}(\phi)$. $\exists X \ \text{SMS}(X) \land \text{tr}(\phi, X)$ is QBF satisfiable iff there is symbolic memory state $\text{sms}$ over $(q, \alpha)$ such that $\text{MC}(\text{sms}, \phi)$ returns $\top$.

Again, the proof is omitted but one can establish a correspondence between the QBF quantifications and the quantifications in MC. As a corollary, $\phi$ in 1SL0 is satisfiable iff $\exists X \ \text{SMS}(X) \land \text{tr}(\phi, X)$ is QBF satisfiable. Since the translation requires only logarithmic space, this provides a PSPACE upper bound for 1SL0. More importantly, we have presented a technique to decide separation logic via a QBF solver and therefore we can take advantage of all the breakthroughs made recently, see e.g. [LB10, HSB14].

Furthermore, we can also regain a translation into first-order logic restricted to the equality predicate as done in [Hag04, CGH05]. Actually, the previous translation composed with the final translation presented below leads again to a polynomial-space decision procedure. However, we believe that we have simplified the reduction while we have been able to provide an intermediate step in QBF that has not been explored and investigated so far.

Let $\chi = Q_1 p_1 \cdots Q_n p_n \ \phi$ be a QBF formula with $\{Q_1, \ldots, Q_n\} \subseteq \{\exists, \forall\}$ and $\phi$ is a propositional formula built over the atomic propositions in $\{p_1, \ldots, p_n\}$

Let us consider the translated formula below and the translation $\text{tr}'$ is homomorphic for Boolean connectives.

\[
\exists x_0, x_1 (x_0 \neq x_1) \land \text{tr}'(\chi)
\]

\[
\text{tr}'(\exists p \ \psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \exists x_p (x_p = x_0 \lor x_p = x_1) \land \text{tr}'(\psi)
\]

$x_p$ is a fresh variable

\[
\text{tr}'(\forall p \ \psi) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \forall x_p (x_p = x_0 \lor x_p = x_1) \Rightarrow \text{tr}'(\psi)
\]

$x_p$ is a fresh variable

\[
\text{tr}'(p) \overset{\text{def}}{=} (x_p = x_1).
\]

It is easy to establish the result below.

**Lemma 5.4.4.** $\chi$ is QBF satisfiable iff $\exists x_0, x_1 (x_0 \neq x_1) \land \text{tr}'(\chi)$ is satisfiable in first-order logic restricted to the equality predicate.

165
5.5 Bibliographical References about Proof Systems

In the previous sections, we have seen that for any \( k \geq 1 \), the set of valid formulae for \( kSL \) is not recursively enumerable and therefore there is no hope to design finite axiomatization for \( kSL \) and to design nice sequent-style proof systems. Nevertheless, calculi exist for abstract separation logics, mostly because first-order conditions are involved in separation models, see e.g. the conditions in [HCGT14]. Similarly, display calculi for bunched logics can be found in [Bro12]. The recent work [HGT15] also presents a sound (but necessarily incomplete) labelled sequent calculus for the logic 2SL that repairs the deficiencies of previous calculi.

Hilbert-style axiomatizations can be also found in [RV14] by using nominals but again this involves mainly abstract separation models and does not deal with concrete heaps as in \( kSL \). Still, it is possible to design complete proof systems for propositional logics, such as the tableaux-style calculus for 2SL0 in [GM10] but completeness for full 2SL is not possible (see Theorem 1.3.5). The literature contains also a few attempts to design complete proof systems for some \( kSL \).

Graph-based decision procedures can be found in [HIOP13], which goes beyond 1SL0 (see also an NP-complete fragment of separation logic that can be decided using a model-theoretical decision procedure [ESS13]).
5.6 Exercises

Exercise 5.1. Let $\mathcal{A} = (\mathbb{N}, h)$ be the structure such that $h : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $h(0) = 1$ and for all $i \geq 1$, $h(i) = i$.

a) Check that $\mathcal{A}$ is a GRASS-model.

b) Given a variable assignment $\tilde{f}$, characterise the set $[\{x.x = x\} \setminus S]_{\mathcal{A},\tilde{f}}$ in terms of $[S]_{\mathcal{A},\tilde{f}}$.

c) Given terms $T_1, \ldots, T_N$, design a term $S$ such that for all $\mathcal{A}$ and $\tilde{f}$, we have

$$\{[T_1]_{\mathcal{A},\tilde{f}}, \ldots, [T_N]_{\mathcal{A},\tilde{f}}\} = [S]_{\mathcal{A},\tilde{f}}.$$

Exercise 5.2. Let $\varphi_s = \varphi^1_s \land \varphi^2_s$ be a spatial formula in SLLB such that $\varphi^1_s$ is a non-empty separating conjunction of equalities or inequalities and $\varphi^2_s$ is a non-empty separating conjunction of reachability atomic formulae. Show that $\varphi_s$ is satisfiable in SLLB iff $\varphi^1_s \land \varphi^2_s$ is satisfiable in 1SL0 augmented with the strict reachability predicate $sreach$.

Exercise 5.3. Prove Lemma 5.2.3

Exercise 5.4. Show the statements in Lemma 5.2.4

Exercise 5.5. Show Lemma 5.2.5

Exercise 5.6. Construct the translation of the SLLB formula $\neg(x_1 \rightarrow x_2 \land x_3 \rightarrow x_4)$ into GRASS (by eliminating also adequately the existential quantifications over set variables).

Exercise 5.7. Prove Lemma 5.2.7

Exercise 5.8. Show Lemma 5.3.1

Exercise 5.9. Proof Lemma 5.3.2

Exercise 5.10. Show Corollary 5.3.8

Exercise 5.11. Compute the abstraction over $(q, \alpha)$ with $q = 4$ and $\alpha = 3$ for the three memory states presented in Figure 1.1.

Exercise 5.12. Given symbolic memory states $\text{sms}$, $\text{sms}_1$ and $\text{sms}_2$, show that $*_{\text{s}}(\text{sms}, \text{sms}_1, \text{sms}_2)$ iff the conditions below hold:
5.6. EXERCISES

a) \( P = P_1 = P_2 \),

b) \( A = A_1 \cup A_2 \) and \( A_1 \cap A_2 = \emptyset \),

c) \( H = H_1 \cup H_2 \),

d) \( n = \min(\alpha, n_1 + n_2) \).

Exercise 5.13. Let \( \beta \geq 0 \). Define a Boolean combination of test formulae from \( \text{Test}(q, \beta) \) that is logically equivalent to \( \text{size}_q \geq \beta \).

Exercise 5.14. For every \( k > 1 \), show that the satisfiability and model-checking problems for \( k\text{SL}0 \) can be solved in \( \text{PSPACE} \).

Exercise 5.15. Explain why the satisfiability and model-checking problems for \( 1\text{SL}0 \) remains in \( \text{PSPACE} \) even if the formulae are encoded as DAGs (instead of trees, as it is implicitly assumed all over the chapter).

Exercise 5.16. Prove Lemma 5.4.1. For instance, the formula \( \text{SMS}(X) \) should enforce that ‘\( EQ \)’ is an equivalence relation, ‘\( EQ \)’ is a congruence for ‘\( A \)’ and ‘\( H \)’, etc.
Chapter 6

CONCLUSION

In this document, we have presented a puristic version of separation logics in which the set of locations (resp. values) is equal to the set of natural numbers and most of the time, the fragments satisfy simple syntactic closure properties. Our main object of study are fragments of the form $kSLk^\prime$, i.e. first-order separation logic with $k$ record fields and at most $k^\prime$ quantified variables in formulae. Several proof techniques have been introduced to establish decidability, undecidability, computational complexity characterisation and expressiveness (see Figure 6.1 for a partial overview of results). Some of the results are quite standard and have been proved at the early age of separation logics (see e.g. [Yan01, COY01, Loz04a]) whereas we have also presented more recent results about expressiveness (see e.g. [BDL12, DD14]) and decision procedures, for instance those based on the SMT framework (see e.g. [PWZ13]) or QBF. Moreover, we have provided formal relationships with other classes of logics introduced with possibly different motivations such as, logic of bunched implications [OP99, Pym02], data logics [BMS+06, FS09], interval temporal logics [Mos83], modal logics [DD15b] or first-order logic [CGH05]. The material in the different chapters has been designed so that unified notations are used and pointers to the literature are provided as much as possible.

Nevertheless, even though the document deals with separation logics, it focuses on a selection of logical investigations and does not say much about other aspects of such logics; the format of an ESSLLI course justifies however the necessity of such a choice. References to analytic proof systems for (abstract or concrete) separation logics are provided in Section 5.5 but this topic would deserve more developments. Besides, the document provides motivations about separation logics related to formal verification by extending Floyd-Hoare logic (see
Figure 6.1: A few results about decidability and complexity
e.g. Section 1.1. Certainly, the document could be completed along these lines by proving program properties by using separation logics and its proof systems. We invite the reader to consult \cite{O'H12, Gor14, Jen13a} to have first-class developments about formal verification with separation logics. Similarly, the emerging use of SMT solvers to decide separation logics (see e.g. Section 5.1.3) witnesses the power of such a framework (Section 5.2 is nevertheless related to it). Other aspects about program verification have been quickly presented in order to focus instead on fundamental properties of separation logics. However, in full generality and in order to illustrate the practical use of separation logics, more material about data values could be considered (see e.g. \cite{BDES09, BBL09, MPQ11}) as well as about the use of inductive predicates such as those related to lists, trees, etc. (see e.g. \cite{IRS13, BFGN14}). We also refer the reader to the slides by P. O’Hearn from the invited talk given at the “SIGPLAN Programming Languages Mentoring Workshop (PLMW)”, Roma 2013, for current trends in the mechanisation of proofs for formal verification.

As conclusion, let us mention a few research directions related to logical investigations of separation logics. First, for the first time, SMT-COMP 2014 run a competition with SMT solvers for separation logic as an “off” event, see e.g. \cite{SC14}. A promising direction consists in developing further SMT-based decision procedures for separation logics allowing even more combinations with other logical theories. Besides, there is still some need and interest to design even more tractable fragments useful for formal verification. As far as we know, it is open whether $1SL0 + \text{sreach}$ is decidable (both separating connectives $\ast$ and $\ast^\circ$ belong to such a fragment), see e.g. its use in \cite{TBR14}. Finally, designing proof systems for separation logics from which decision procedures can be designed (when possible) remains quite open. For instance, as far as we know, no label-free sequent-style calculus exists for $1SL0$ that can lead to a decision procedure that runs in polynomial space. These are only a few possible directions.
Bibliography


173


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY

[CKM14] W. Charatonik, E. Kieroński, and F. Mazowiecki. Decidability of Weak

[Coo72] D. Cooper. Theorem proving in arithmetic without multiplication. Machine


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


183
BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


185
BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


Index

abduction, 149
abstraction, 157
adjunct, 25
adjunction, 41
aliasing, 19
ancestor, 22, 123
assignment, 23
associativity, 40
axiom
  small, 15
BBI-frame, 33
BBI-model, 33

commutativity, 40
condition
  locality, 119
connected component, 25
connective
  chop, 10
  modal, 10
correctness, 17
  partial, 17
  total, 17
cut
  clean, 121
data domain, 113
data word, 67, 114
distributivity, 40
domain, 22

element, 85
  neutral, 40
entry, 85
extension
  conservative, 22
footprint, 145
fork, 71
formula
  domain-exact, 30
  intuitionistic, 30, 41
  pure, 29, 41, 53
  spatial, 54
  strictly exact, 30
  valid, 56
game
  Ehrenfeucht-Fraïssé, 134
GRASS-model, 143
heap, 19, 22
  disjoint, 22
  segmented, 72, 108
Hoare triple, 15
index, 85, 87
  large, 92
inductive predicate, 12
irreflexivity, 34
location, 22, 143
logic
INDEX

kSL, 112
1SL3(∗)[Z, =], 115
BL, 32
Boolean BL, 11, 32, 55
bunched implications, 32
dependence, 10
description, 9
FO2, 129
freeze LTL, 111
GRASS, 142
GRASS-FO, 146
heap, 128
Hennessy-Milner, 128
hybrid, 115
interval temporal, 10
intuitionistic, 32, 41
K, 34, 129
linear, 32
LTL, 66
LTL↓(F, F−1), 115
matching, 166
MLH, 128
modal, 9, 11, 39
PDL, 10, 129
public announcement, 40
sabotage, 39
SL(\(\mathcal{P}_{na}(N)\), \(\uplus\), \{\emptyset\}), 57
SLLB, 141, 142
temporal, 9, 11
tense, 129

magic wand, 21, 23
memory size, 154
memory state, 21
symbolic, 157
Minsky machine, 58, 66, 67, 81
model
RAM-domain, 56

separation, 55
monotonicity, 42
parenthesis
left, 86
right, 87
pin, 85
pointer, 19
postcondition, 15
precondition, 15
predecessor, 22, 67, 88
problem
abduction, 32
anti-frame, 32
entailment, 31
frame inference, 32
model-checking, 31
QBF, 44
satisfiability, 25, 31
validity, 25, 31
QBF, 138, 162
range, 22
relative completeness, 17
rule
conditional, 16
constancy, 16
frame, 20
local mutation, 29
while, 16
SAT, 138
semantics
intuitionistic, 20
separating conjunction, 23
separating implication, 23
settraction, 25, 60, 109
set comprehension, 144